

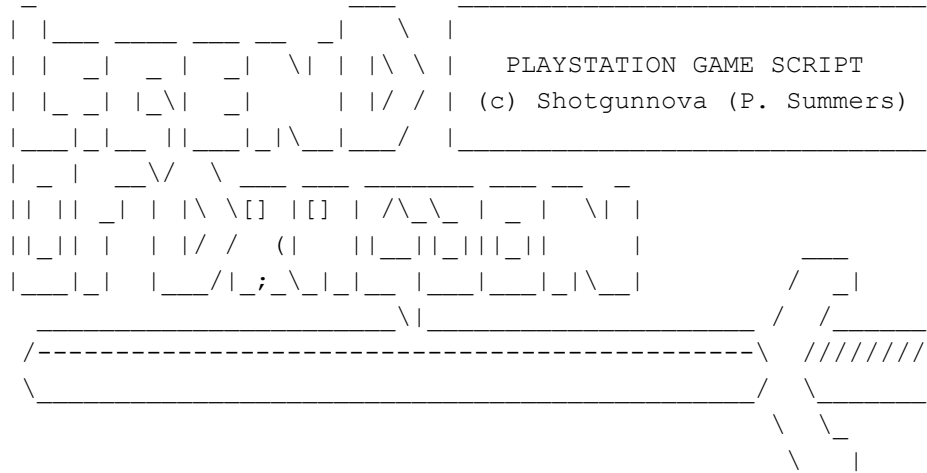
# The Legend of Dragoon Game Script

by Shotgunnova

Updated on Oct 20, 2007

"When the clash of swords echo,  
The journey chasing the past ends and  
The journey to know today begins.  
One soul seeks another and  
Pledges their sworn friendship to another.  
One mystery begets the next and  
The doors of are are opened.

'You are free to sever the chates of fate that bind you...'"



## CHAPTER ONE - SERDIAN WAR

01) Prologue & Beginning Scenes.....	PSB1
02) Seles.....	SLS1
03) Forest.....	FRS1
04) Hellena Prison.....	HLL1
05) Forest.....	FRS2
06) Prairie.....	PRR1
07) Limestone Cave.....	LMC1
08) Indels Castle Capital Bale.....	ICC1
09) Town of Hoax.....	HX01
10) Marshland.....	MRS1
11) Volcano Villude.....	VLV1
12) Nest of Dragon.....	NSD1
13) Commercial Town of Lohan.....	CTL1
14) Nest of Dragon.....	NSD2
15) Shrine of Shirley.....	SOS1
16) Commercial Town of Lohan II.....	CTL2
17) Hellena Prison.....	HLL2
18) Seles.....	SLS2
19) Black Castle at Kazas.....	KZS1
20) Black Castle at Kazas II.....	KZS2

## CHAPTER TWO - PLATINUM SHADOW

21) Twin Castle at Fletz.....	TCF1
22) The Barrens.....	BRN1
23) Donau the Flower City.....	DNF1
24) Twin Castle at Fletz II.....	TCF2
25) Valley of Corrupted Gravity.....	VLC1
26) Home of Giganto.....	HGG1
27) Twin Castle at Fletz III.....	TCF3

28) The Queen Fury.....	TQF1
29) Phantom Ship.....	PHT1
30) Village of Lidiera.....	VLL1
31) City of Fueno.....	CTF1
32) Undersea Cavern.....	UND1
33) Twin Castle at Fletz IV.....	TCF4

CHAPTER THREE - FATE & SOUL

34) Furni the Water City.....	FRN1
35) Evergreen Forest.....	EVG1
36) Crystal Palace at Deningrad.....	DNG1
37) Forest of Winglies.....	FWG1
38) Royal Capital Kadessa.....	RCK1
39) Crystal Palace at Deningrad II.....	DNG2
40) Mountain of Mortal Dragon.....	MTM1
41) Crystal Palace at Deningrad III.....	DNG3
42) Kashua Glacier.....	KSH1
43) Tower of Flanel.....	TOF1
44) Snowfield.....	SNW1
45) Fort Magrad.....	FTM1
46) Capital Vellweb.....	VLL1

CHAPTER THREE - MOON & FATE

47) Death Frontier.....	DTF1
48) Spring Breath Town Ulara.....	SBT1
49) Outland Village Rouge.....	TLV1
50) Magical City Aglis.....	MCA1
51) Law City Zenebatos.....	LCZ1
52) Death City Mayfil.....	DCM1
53) The Divine Tree.....	TDT1
54) Need + Thanks.....	NDT1
55) Updates and Legality.....	UPD1

-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 01 - Prologue & Beginning Scenes PBS1 |  
-----o

[The game opens with an FMV, showing fireballs in a sleepy, mist-filled town. Enemies on their steeds lay waste to the buildings. Eventually, the commander arrives at the site.]

Soldier: "Great Commander, this way."

[He's taken to a girl.]

Commander: "So, this is her."

[He takes out a dull ball and holds it above her forehead. It glows and the light shines into her, then fades.]

Commander: "Hmm, indeed. Put her in custody. Is this really necessary?"

Man in Hood: "It is his his majesty, Emperor Doel's command, to take that girl into custody."

Commander: "Who is she?"

Man in Hood: "That is not your concern."

[Elsewhere, a woman stands on a cliff and watches a forest. A gigantic green creature pokes its head out.]

Woman: "The Green Tusked Dragon, Feyrbrand."

[She starts to jump down into the forest. Meanwhile, in the woods, a man in red armor sits on a log, reading a paper.]

Dart: "Hmm, 'Chance of war more likely'. I hope it's just a rumor."

[The sound of enemies riding by attracts Dart's attention.]

Dart: "...?"

[He goes to see at the road, and two stragglers come upon him.]

Soldier: "Who are you!?"

Soldier 2: "Are you a mercenary of Basil?"

Soldier: "Answer!!"

[Dart knocks the polearm back with his sword.]

Soldier: "What are you doing!? Are you drawing your sword against us!?"

[A roar in the forest ensues.]

Soldier 2: "Wh, What is!?"

[Feyrbrand appears on the road, sending the soldiers retreating.]

Dart: "What the heck is this!? Argh!! I gotta do something or I'll be killed!!"

[Dart retreats, too.]

Dart: "What a monster! It's coming! Urgh!!"

[A woman drops down and takes Dart behind a rock.]

Dart: "Who are you!?"

Woman: "(Shhh. If you don't want to die.)"

[Feyrbrand leaves once he can't find his prey.]

Dart: "Thank you for saving me. What the heck was that!?"

Woman: "It's a Dragon."

Dart: "Dragon!?"

Woman: "But it's strange. That village could've been easily destroyed without a Dragon."

Dart: "The village...? Are you talking about Seles!? Then those soldiers were!?"

Woman: "There won't be anything left by now."

Dart: "Seles is my village!!"

[Dart leaves and a strange black-ish glow resonates on the woman.]

Woman: [Oh my god...!? That man must be...? No. There is no way.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 02 - Seles SLS1 |  
o-----o

[Dart tops a hill and sees Seles burning.]

Dart: "Oh no!! My god!! Where is everybody!?"

[Dart jumps the town fence. He sees some soldiers by a villager.]

Dart: "!?"

Villager: "You didn't get enough killing!?"

Soldier of Imperial Sandora: "Hee hee hee!! It may be enough if I kill you."

[Another soldier kicks him.]

Villager: "Ah...."

Dart: "Stop!!"

Soldier of Imperial Sandora 2: "Oh, a mercenary? Isn't it a little late for you  
to show up?"

Dart: "Shut up!! What are you doing here!?"

Soldier of Imperial Sandora 2: "Can't you see? We're gonna occupy this area,  
and these worms were in our way."

Dart: "Occupy!? Were you sent by the Imperial Army?"

Soldier of Imperial Sandora 2: "Even if we were, it's none of your business.  
You're gonna die soon!!"

[Dart defeats the two soldiers, and they flee.]

Soldiers of Imperial Sandora: "Ahhhhh!"

Villager: "Are...are you...really...Dart?"

Dart: "Yes! It's me! Why is Seles under attack!?"

Villager: "War... Imperial Sandora...attacked us..."

Dart: "What about the truce!?"

Villager: "Yeah. Suddenly... I didn't imagine...they could come to...such an  
outlying area."

Dart: "If only I had come back sooner!"

Villager: "There is something, you have to do... Shana. Rescue Shana, only...  
you can....."

[The villager dies.]

Dart: "What about Shana!? Hey!! Wait!!"

[Dart walks further into town and sees a man face-down.]

Dart: "!? Hang on! Ahh...."

[The face-down man gets up.]

Plos: "That voice, is that you Dart?"

Dart: "This way."

[He helps him sit down by a wall.]

Dart: "It's just a light wound."

Plos: "I guess, I was lucky. But look at this village. If only you came back  
earlier..."

Dart: "..."

Plos: "It's about Shana, too."

Dart: "What's wrong with Shana?"

Plos: "She was taken away. It seems Shana was their primary purpose."

Dart: "Do you know where they went?"

Plos: "I...don't know."

[A Sandora commander runs over.]

Dart: "I'm gonna make him talk!"

Commander: "Besting a private is no reason to be confident."

Dart: "Where did you take Shana?"

Commander: "Shana.... Don't worry about her. She must be receiving the  
courtesies of Hellena Prison by now."

Dart: "Hellena!?"

Commander: "Surprised, huh? We specifically invited only that woman."

Dart: "You must be kidding!? You attacked the village only to kidnap Shana!?"

Commander: "Exactly, but don't worry. I will let you follow them. Although not  
to Hellena! To 'Hell'!"

[Dart defeats the Commander in battle.]

Plos: "Dart, you are going to go rescue Shana, aren't you? I won't stop you,  
but be careful. Your journey is not yet over, is it?"

Dart: "...No."

Plos: "You can count on us about Seles. There should be enough people who can still move."

Dart: "Thank you. When I settle everything, I'll be back. With Shana."

[As Dart leaves the village, a scene in Hellena Prison plays. Shana is thrown into a jail cell by a guard.]

Hellena Warden: "Be good in there!"

[Elsewhere, on a wooden walkway, an enormously fat man confronts the hooded man from the beginning video.]

Fruegel: "Who the heck is the girl!? You can tell me!!"

Man in Hood: "The world's future rests on her."

Fruegel: "That's it!?"

Man in Hood: "This is enough information for you. Those of you who do not grasp the value should just do what the order says."

Fruegel: "I am not taking your orders! Only His Majesty, Doel can order me!"

Man in Hood: "Anyway.... You must remember this."

[He whips out a sword and Fruegel falls back.]

Man in Hood: "If you make a scratch on her, it'll cost more than your head. This is a message from Emperor Doel."

Fruegel: "Argh!!"

[Out of frustration, Fruegel throws a guard off the side of the walkway.]

Guard: "Ahhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhh!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 03 - Forest FRS1 |  
o-----o

[Dart enters the forest and a dog barks at him.]

"!! I have no time to deal with you! It reminds me...."

[He has a flashback of himself and Shana when they were little.]

Shana: "This way! This way!!"

[A dog barks at them.]

Dart: "Cut it out! Leave Shana alone!!"

[The flashback ends.]

Dart: "'Leave Shana alone!' Hang in there, I'll get you out from there."

[The prison is located on a small island offshore, connected to the mainland by a wooden bridge. It constantly emits smoke. Dart runs to the path and looks out at the structure.]

Dart: "Well, how can I sneak in?"

[The young man takes cover as a cart rolls by just then; he follows it to the prison checkpoint, where a guard inspects the cargo.]

Gatekeeper of Hellena: "...I see. Good meat and fish. Sir Freugel will be happy."

Merchant: "You bought a lot recently. Is there something going on?"

Gatekeeper of Hellena: "It's not the business of a merchant like you!"

Merchant: "Okay, okay. Sorry."

Gatekeeper of Hellena: "I'll inspect the load!"

[The gatekeeper does.]

Gatekeeper of Hellena: "It seems to be okay. Lower the bridge!"

Dart: (Now!)

[He jumps in the back and bums a ride inside.]

Dart: (I made it.)

[The merchant sees him.]

Merchant: "Who, who are you!?"

Dart: (I'm discovered!)

Voice: "This way!!"

[Dart kills the guard that comes to fight him.]

Merchant: "He, Help me! I am just a delivery man."

Dart: "Be quiet. I am not going to kill you."

Merchant: "O, Okay. I won't make a noise."

[Dart heads to the cell block area.]

Hellena Warden: "Move quicker!"

Dart: "?!"

[Down the way, the warden is yelling at some prisoners.]

Hellena Warden: "Move quicker!"

Prisoner: "Argh!"

Hellena Warden: "You have such bad luck! You will regret not being killed on the battlefield!"

Knight of Basil: "What do you mean!?"

Hellena Warden: "You really believe you can live comfortably in the jail? The head warden, Fruegel will feed you to the monster!"

[The warden blocks the way as one of the knights tries to escape.]

Hellena Warden: "Oops?!"

Knight of Basil: "Feed us to the monster!? I won't let you humiliate us anymore!"

Hellena Warden: "Oh, feisty feisty. It's the worst kind of POW, but the best kind of feed."

Knight of Basil: "If you want to kill me, kill me now!!"

Voice: "I won't let him!"

[A man with a spear kills a warden and appears in the room.]

Knight of Basil: "Sir Lavitz!!!"

Hellena Warden: "You, you bastard!! You broke out of the jail!? Silly guy!! You think you can escape from here alone!?"

Lavitz: "I'll take care of this!! Survive and go back to Indels Castle alive!! Tell King Albert...!"

[The knights run off...]

Voice: "I won't let you!!"

[..and the knights get thrown off the balcony and fall to their deaths.]

Guard: "I took care of those guys!"

[Dart runs over.]

Dart: "Is this civil war!?"

Guard: "You! Who are you!? Are you a dog of Basil too!?"

[Lavitz clears the guards and starts to fight with Dart.]

Lavitz: "Who are you?"

Dart: "I am Dart! I am not your enemy!"

Lavitz: "I am Lavitz Slambert! I am the head of the First Knighthood of the Kingdom of Basil! Well, it seems we don't have time for introductions!"

Dart: "No we don't!"

[The two fend off the guards. Lavitz looks down to where the knights fell.]



Lavitz: "I will carry out your wish. You said, Dart. I cannot imagine there is somebody who intentionally comes to Hellena. What are you up to?"

Dart: "I am here to rescue someone important to me. Do you know anything about her!? Her name is Shana!"

Lavitz: "I am sorry, but..."

Dart: "I'll look elsewhere."

Lavitz: "Wait! I'll go with you."

Dart: "I thought you had to go back to the castle as soon as possible?"

Lavitz: "She's important, this girl you are looking for?"

Dart: "It's my problem. It was my fault."

Lavitz: "I don't know what brought you here but Hellena is not that easy to go through alone."

Dart: "..."

Lavitz: "That goes for me too. But, I can break out from here, together with you! Of course with the girl."

Dart: "How come you trust me? We've just met."

Lavitz: "The raid you made was quite impressive. I trusted you to guard my back. That's the way I think."

Dart: "All right. Let's go together."

[The two find their way to the second tower, and come to a room crawling with security guards.]

Lavitz: "This room is extra tightly guarded."

Dart: "!? What about this key?"

Lavitz: "Take it with us. We'll need it if the girl called Shana is under confinement. But why only that girl?"

Dart: "I intend to ask that directly to the head warden. But that's after we rescue Shana."

[In the second tower, the party finds guards standing outside a cell.]

Guard: "You, you are from Basil!!"

Dart: "Lavitz! Let's get'em before they make a noise!"

Lavitz: "Yeah!"

[The guards are dispatched.]

Voice: "Who is it!?"

Dart: "That voice!! Is that Shana!? It's me!!"

Voice: "Dart!? Is that you Dart!?"

Dart: "Yes it is me!! I'm here to rescue you!!"

Lavitz: "Hurry up!! The guard is coming!!"

[Dart enters the cell.]

Dart: "Shana!!"

Shana: "Dart...."

Dart: "I'm here to rescue you."

Shana: "..."

Dart: "You haven't forgotten about me even though we haven't seen each other in five years?"

Shana: "How could I forget? Show me your face."

Dart: "I haven't changed much."

Shana: "Yes, you have. You look much stronger, much stronger than the Dart I knew."

Lavitz: "Hurry up!! The guards are coming back!!"

[They exit the cell.]

Guard: "The girl is breaking out!!"

Guard 2: "I won't let her!!"

[They give the guards a beatdown.]

Dart: "Are you hurt?"

Shana: "I am fine."

Lavitz: "You can celebrate later. We are still deep in the belly of the enemy. Besides, it's too damp to have a party, isn't it?"

Dart: "Let's go, Shana. Follow me okay?"

Shana: "Dart, I'm 18 years old now. I can fight too!"

[She steals a bow lying against the wall.]

Dart: "Shana...."

Lavitz: "She grew up. She was alone in such a hell like place. If she was a regular woman, she wouldn't have been able to survive. Of course, there are not that many fools who would come here to save her."

Dart: "But, the Shana of my memory hasn't changed a bit."

Lavitz: "Let's talk about that after we get out of here."

[Elsewhere, guards are reporting to Fruegel about the prisoners' escape.]

Fruegel: "Say that again!?"

Hellena Warden: "Well, well, the Knight from Basil broke out of the jail!! I am sorry!!"

Fruegel: "I am not talking about that rat!! After that!!"

Hellena Warden: "The girl from Seles was taken by the red guy."

Fruegel: "What!? What did you say!?"

Hellena Warden: "The girl was taken away by the guy with red armor!!"

[Fruegel throws the warden over the railing.]

Hellena Warden: "AHHHHHHHHH!!!!!"

Fruegel: "You bastard! Don't let them out alive!! Wait!! I almost forgot the most important thing, don't kill the girl. IT's an order from His Majesty Doel!"

Hellena Warden: "Aye, aye sir!!"

Fruegel: "If you fail, I will behead all of you!!"

[The warden leaves.]

Fruegel: "The red one!? I'll get you!! I might as well dye everything else red with your blood!!"

[As the party turns to leave Hellena, the warden is there waiting for them.]

Fruegel: "So, you are the red one acting like a prince!!"

Dart: "Then what!?"

Fruegel: "There is one answer!! You and the leader of the knights are feed for the pet!! After I mince you up!!"

Dart: "Lavitz, is this the head warden?"

Lavitz: "His name is Fruegel. He is so bad, even the people of his own country are afraid of him."

Fruegel: "You have such a calm face, or are you paralyzed from fear!?"

Dart: "You attacked Seles didn't you!?"

Fruegel: "No. I just gave them the order."

Dart: "Why did you have Shana taken away!?"

Fruegel: "I don't know. Emperor Doel said to just bring that girl back. The order was so trivial that I added the new one of annihilating Seles!!"

Dart: "Fruegel! Unforgivable!!"

[The party defeats Fruegel.]

Fruegel: "AGHHH!"

Dart: "Is he immortal!? Let's get out of here, Shana!"

Lavitz: "Get on the horse!! Hurry!!"

Fruegel: "Bastard!! Keep them from going even if it costs you your life!!"

[The two make a breakaway and start to leave the prison.]

Voice: "Raise the bridge!! Jail break!!"

Shana: "Lavitz!"

[Lavitz manages to get past the bridge before it raises all the way.]

Lavitz: "Whoa!!"

[They escape. Meanwhile, inside:]

Fruegel: "Bring her back here!! Or you will be dead!!"

[Fruegel sees the man in the black hood.]

Fruegel: "Y, You!! When did you sneak in!?"

Man in Hood: "Should we report this to His Majesty Doel?"

Fruegel: "Wait! I'll bring back the girl!"

Man in Hood: "Otherwise, you would be dead by now."

[Fruegel turns to a warden nearby.]

Fruegel: "You go too, bastard!!"

[Fruegel walks off.]

Man in Hood: "It doesn't matter. Everything is going just as I planned.  
Yes.... They don't know they are in the palm of my hand."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 05 - Forest FRS2 |  
o-----o

[The party retreats back to the forest separating them from Seles. They stop when they see enemies on horses ahead.]

Shana: "What is...?"

Dart: "It's coming from the Forest."

Lavitz: "It seems that the Imperial army is camped here. It's too risky for us."

Dart: "Yeah. Let's take another route."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 06 - Prairie PRR1 |

o-----o  
[The party enters the prairie after fleeing from the Forest. Lavitz lags.]

Dart: "Lavitz, can you keep going?"

Lavitz: "Yeah!"

[An arrow comes over the hill and hits Lavitz in the leg.]

Lavitz: "Ahg!!"

Dart: "!!"

Shana: "!!"

Dart: "Hide yourselves!!"

[Dart helps Lavitz hide behind a rock.]

Dart: "Does it hurt?"

Lavitz: "It's just a scratch."

Shana: "But you gotta cover the wound."

Lavitz: "it can be treated later. We gotta run first."

Dart: "I will carry Lavitz. Shana, go first."

Shana: "Don't treat me like a child. I will go with you guys."

Lavitz: "I can walk by myself."

Shana: "Here they come!"

Dart: "Let's go!!"

[The three run off as the enemies top the hill. In the next screen, they find a large tree.]

Dart: "!!"

[They all hide behind it as the wardens come. A noise catches their attention.]

Hellena Warden A: "!!"

Hellena Warden B: "!!"

Hellena Warden A: "There they are!!"

Hellena Warden B: "Women first!! Then we might spare those people in Basil!!"

[A little mouse runs out onto the path.]

Hellena Warden B: "Is this the fugitive?"

Hellena Warden A: "Don't be silly!! Go look over there!!"

[The wardens run down the road.]

Dart: "That was close."

[In the adjacent screen, they find a stable. Lavitz kneels down.]

Lavitz: "Tut, such a trifle wound."

Shana: "Does it still hurt?"

Lavitz: "A little bit."

Shana: "I learned first aid, I thought it would be useful. Particularly in times like these."

Dart: "Shana? Learning? That's something new!"

Shana: "Mr. So-and-so might come back injured at any moment."

Dart: "Let's use the shack over there."

Lavitz: "All right."

[They head into the shack, and Shana patches the Basil knight up.]

Shana: "Here you go."

Lavitz: "Thanks. It's much better now."

Dart: "It seems we completely lost those fools from Hellena."

Shana: "Dart? Tell me, about these last five years. It's okay, nevermind! We don't have time for this now."

Dart: "It was a journey for revenge. It was a journey to find the guy who deprived me of something precious, and kill him. I couldn't tell you Shana. That's why I left by myself."

Shana: "The Black Monster? I only know the name. Nobody would tell me more about it because they said I was still too young."

Lavitz: "What is the Black Monster? What are you talking about?"

Dart: "I have two homes. One is Seles, where I spend time with Shana. And the other is where I spent time with my parents, my first home, which was taken from me by the monster eighteen years ago. Neet."

[A flashback happens at Neet. It's in flames.]

Narrative: Dart's hometown -- 18 years ago.

Dart: "It was when I was five years old. Neet was assaulted by the Black Monster. We were lucky. Only three of could get out from the village."

[Dart escapes from the burning town with his mother and father, who stop at the edge of town and look at the flames. The father prepares to go back in to help the others.]

Dart: "But my father returned to the village."

[His mother hugs him and goes as well.]

Dart: "And my mother followed my father to the village to help everybody, but

that's where the Black Monster was waiting. I was left alone, shivering and waited for dawn. The sun revealed a foreign landscape. It was a completely transformed Neet. And I found this."

[In the present, Dart is holding a shining stone.]

Dart: "What I found on the ground was only this. It's a memento, the only thing my father carried around all the time."

Shana: "Dart, it's okay. I understand."

Dart: "Shana, I'm sorry. I didn't tell you."

Shana: "It's okay, I knew you would tell me someday. Don't say anymore."

Lavitz: "So, you just came back from a journey to bring closure to the past."

Dart: "I'm still not there yet."

Lavitz: "You said Neet. It doesn't seem to be a village in this country."

Dart: "It was located farther north from here. I guess nobody even remembers its name anymore. Lavitz, tell me. What is going on in this country?"

Lavitz: "Currently, our Kingdom of Basil is at war with the Imperial Sandora. The war has spread all over Serdio."

Dart: "Why was the truce broken?"

Lavitz: "Because of the Dragon, the legendary monster added weight to Sandora and broke the balance of power. Then Emperor Doel started to be more aggressive."

Dart: "Dragon? No, no way! Such a thing can be used in war?"

Lavitz: "Do you know something about it!?"

Dart: "I was swooped down on by a Dragon before I entered Seles. I was overwhelmed. There was no way to escape from it. I was saved by a passing warrior. That's why I am still alive."

Lavitz: "The Dragon is advancing faster than I thought. We must do something or it'll be too late."

Dart: "You mean more casualties?"

Lavitz: "Yeah. It's a 'war'. Anyway, I have to go back to Indels Castle in Bale. There are so many things I have to report to King Albert. You know what, Dart? You guys should come along with me. Minister Noish might know something about the Black Monster."

Dart: "I see. They're a royalty with a long history. I might be able to find out something new."

Lavitz: "It's a done deal."

Shana: "Lavitz, don't take chances. You are not completely well."

Lavitz: "You'll make a good wife one day."

Shana: "Thanks!"

Dart: "Let's go."

[After looking for a way out, and seeing a log that can fall into the river, they put two and two together and look for an axe to make the bridge. There's one in the shack.]

Dart: "It is a pretty well-worn ax. I get it. We can knock down the tree on the cliff using this...."

[They go up to the tree on the cliff.]

Dart: "If we put this tree across the river...."

Lavitz: "Hmm.... It may work as a bridge. It could be worth trying."

[Dart starts chopping it down.]

Dart: "Whoa!!"

[They try to grab hold of the tree, but it falls off the cliff.]

Lavitz: "Shoot!!"

Dart: "Have to think about another way."

[They go back to the river.]

Dart: "What's that!?"

[The log they cut floats down the river and wedges horizontally.]

Dart: "We can cross with this!!"

[The party makes their way out of the Prairie and heads towards Bale. But first things first...]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 07 - Limestone Cave LMC1 |  
o-----o

[Inside the cave, the party finds a room with a bunch of stepping stones.]

Dart: "Stepping stones. Shana, be careful not to slip."

Shana: "Okay."

[Dart and Shana go ahead, and Lavitz pulls up the rear. Once the first two are across, Lavitz slips and hangs onto a stone, ready to plunge into the freezing water.]

Lavitz: "Aw!!"

Dart: "Lavitz!!"

[Dart goes to pull him up.]

Shana: "Dart!! Lavitz!!"



Lavitz: "Whoa!!!"

[They all make it across.]

Dart: "Huff huff huff!"

Lavitz: "This is the second time you saved my life."

Dart: "Huff, huff, I was just around."

Lavitz: "Even though that was the case, I was lucky you were around, Dart.  
It'll be a long relationship we will have."

Dart: "Yup. That's right."

[Dart and Lavitz walk off.]

Shana: "Excuse me, you guys! Don't leave me like that!"

[Off the side of the path, the party can find glowing balls of light.]

Dart: "These are Rock Fireflies."

Shana: "Oh, you know a lot."

Dart: "Well, I used to be saved by these a lot."

Lavitz: "Me too. In particular, the ones close to a battlefield were helpful."

Shana: "Excuse me. Don't just change amongst yourselves and leave me out. Tell me what they are."

[The fireflies glow brighter.]

Shana: "Oh!! Oh boy!"

Lavitz: "The light from a Rock Firefly has a healing power."

Dart: "Well, Shana leareded at least one thing."

Shana: "Well well. I know something you don't know too, Dart."

Dart: "Wh, what is that?"

Shana: "I'm not telling."

Lavitz: "Well, you have been away from each other for five years. It's natural to not know about each other. Wait, my mom and I aren't like that. Every time I go back to Bale, she welcomes me with the same smile. Wh, What? Did I say something wrong?"

Dart: "Let's get going. Your mother is waiting for you in Bale right?"

Lavitz: "Yeah!"

[The party gets in sight of the cave exit.]

Dart: "There is something there."

Lavitz: "Could it be the much talked about guardian of the Cave?"

Dart: "Shana, step back!"

Shana: "Don't worry about me. I can help!"

Lavitz: "It's coming!!"

[They defeat the snake-boss, Urobolus.]

Dart: "We did it!"

Lavitz: "Now, let's get on our way to Indels Castle."

Dart: "Shana."

[Lavitz and Dart start to walk ahead. Meanwhile, the dying Urobolus rears up and lunges at Shana.]

Dart: "Shana!!!!"

[Dart and Lavitz can't reach her in time, but a brilliant light shines from Shana and literally explodes the snake's sections apart.]

Shana: "Wh, what was...?"

Dart: "What on earth happened?"

Shana: "I, I don't know."

Dart: "..."

Lavitz: "Anyway, we are safe. We should think about how to get out of here.  
It'll be fine when we get to Bale. I think."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 08 - Indels Castle Capital Bale ICC1 |  
o-----o

[The three finally arrive in the bustling town of Bale, and head to the castle throne room to report to King Albert.]

Lavitz: "I am the head of the First Knighthood, Lavitz Slambert. I am back from the field."

King Albert: "Oh, Lavitz! I was feeling uneasy because I had heard you were missing! Oh, please, make yourself comfortable, everyone!"

Lavitz: "Your Majesty, it's more than I deserve."

Noish: "Ha ha ha! It was true! His Majesty was so dismayed that he couldn't see to his affairs of state."

King Albert: "Oh Noish, please don't tease me. Lavitz is a friend from my childhood as well as a master of martial arts. Anyway, where have you been?"

Lavitz: "After my First Knighthood was wiped out, I was captured by Sandora and held against my will in Hellena Prison...."

King Albert: "What...in Hellena...."

Lavitz: "However, thanks to the act of this young man, I managed to break out. Let me introduce these people to you. Dart and Shana. They are from Seles."

King Albert: "I thank you for saving Lavitz. I appreciate it from the bottom of my heart. In gratitude for this, tell me if you need anything."

Dart: "I have a favor to ask. Is it possible to take care of Shana in this castle?"

Shana: "What!?"

Dart: "It seems Imperial Sandora attacked Seles to take Shana away. So, they could go after Shana anytime, and when I think of it...."

Shana: "Is that the reason you brought me here?"

Dart: "Shana...."

Shana: "I can walk next to Dart. I have been working towards that. There is nothing we can do about the time we were apart, but I want to be with you forever!"

King Albert: "Unfortunately, you cannot leave her here. Imperial Sandora obtained the force called the Dragon, and went on the offensive. We are holding the battle line in Hoax, but if the dragon can fly at low altitudes and directly attack the castle, we cannot defend it even with the high ramparts. There is no place safe in Serdio now. Besides, you do know how she feels about you? Don't you?"

Dart: "Shana, it may be even more dangerous from now on."

Shana: "I don't mind as long as I can be with you, Dart."

Dart: "Well, I take back the request. But...one more thing. I would like to ask a question to Minister Noish."

Noish: "Ask me anything, son. My head is filled with all the legends and history of the Continent of Endiness."

Dart: "I was on a journey to pursue the Black Monster."

Noish: "The Black...Monster...."

Dart: "The monster that attacked Neet 18 years ago. The only thing I know is that he deprived me of my parents, and my hometown."

Noish: "Hmm! You were a victim of the devil!"

Dart: "I want to hear everything! Please tell me about it!"

Noish: "Hmm, there is hardly any information left. Everything that was related to him was reduced to ashes. The only thing I know is: the Black Monster is called the devil that disobeyed the great existence, and it is also known for devouring the god."

Dart: "Devouring the 'god'?"

Noish: "Yes, and surprisingly, it shows up in history beginning 11,000 years

ago."

Albert: "11,000 years ago is the time the Dragon Campaign ended."

Noish: "You're exactly right, Your Majesty. Instead, I will tell you the story of the Dragon Campaign. As if they were gods, Winglies ruled over all living creatures, and used them as slaves. The enslaved suffered a terrible domination and injustice. Their anger turned to a flame of fury; then, a gust of wind blew throughout the lands, spreading the flame to a blazing fire. The wind was Emperor Diaz. Seven incarnations Dragons served the emperor. Their bravery inspired people to take up arms. Thus began the Dragon Campaign. It was a harsh war. Both people and Winglies suffered countless injuries and fatalities. After a long period of suffering, it was the humans who aquired the future. The age of humans had begun."

Dart: "The Black Monster appeared after the Dragon Campaign."

[A man enters the throne room.]

Praetorian of Basil: "Excuse me sir! It's time for the war meeting!"

King Albert: "I see. Tell them we will come soon. Dart, Shana? This war will be a particularly harsh one for those who no longer have a home to return to. The castle is very quiet now. It is the best place to think about your future."

Shana: "But, this is our first time in a castle."

King Albert: "Well, there is a place with a great view next to this room. Go enjoy yourself."

Shana: "The view from the castle....I see! Please excuse me!"

[Shana goes out onto the balcony.]

Dart: "She is so hasty.... Please excuse me, too."

[Dart goes onto the balcony as the war meeting begins.]

Dart: "From here, we can see all of Basil. Might we even be able to see Seles?"

Shana: "Seles is over the mountain. Besides, we cannot see it anyway because we are so far.... I hope everybody is safe."

Dart: "I'm sure they are okay."

[Lavitz enters.]

Lavitz: "Yes, they are. According to the brief by my aide, most of the people in the village are safe."

Dart: "Really? I am relieved to hear that. But, it will take time ot rebuild the village."

Shana: "Still, good... I can meet everybody again."

Lavitz: "But, we have bad news. Sandora is now readying itself to attack us. They are planning to use the Dragon for the offensive on Hoax."

Dart: "A Dragon!? If they release that monster in the battle, it will be total genocide!"

Lavitz: "Our role, as the Knighthood, is to stop it. I am heading to Hoax now. Maintaining the battle line will determine the future of Basil."

Dart: "I have lived only for myself. I believed it was something I had to complete by myself even if I had to leave Shana and the people of the village behind. But, when I came back, look at this. I almost lost my hometown again! Lavitz. I am going to Hoax with you! I don't want to see anymore senseless bloodshed!"

Lavitz: "What about the Black Monster?"

Dart: "We have to end the war first!"

Shana: "Once Dart makes up his mind, he never changes it. Of course, I am going too. I cannot stand the war either. I can fight too!"

Lavitz: "You guys...."

Dart: "Everything is determined and now we have to prepare."

Lavitz: "Th, then, let's go to Bale now! There are item shops, weapon shops, and my home! Please meet my mother! She will be happy! Because she hasn't had a guest for a while!"

[The party moseys on over to Lavitz' house.]

Lavitz: "Mom! I'm home!"

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh Lavitz!! It's Lavitz!! I was worried because I didn't hear from you for a long time."

Lavitz: "Sandora's resistance was tougher than I thought. But don't worry. We defeated them!"

Lavitz's Mother: "Your late father would be proud to hear that."

Dart: "Lavitz, what about Hellena?"

Shana: (Don't mention that to her!)

Lavitz: (Sorry, but I don't want her to be worried.) "I don't know what he is talking about."

Lavitz's Mother: "Well, fine. I am already happy just having you come home, but.... You brought a bride with you! My big baby!"

Lavitz: "Mom! She is not!"

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh, don't be shy. What's your name?"

Shana: "Sh, Shana."

Lavitz's Mother: "Shana, my son is a little awkward and stubborn. But he is very sweet natured."

Dart: R1 --> He is not!

R2 --> Good luck, Shana.

R1: "He is not!"

Lavitz: "He is right. She is Dart's sweetheart."

Dart: "He, Hey!! When did I become Shana's...."

Shana: "It's true. I...I am Dart's girlfriend."

Dart: "What!?"

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh! Please excuse me. Take good care of Shana."

Dart: "Well...I, I don't know what to say." (What's going on!)

Lavitz: (Once my mom gets an idea into her head, that's the end.  
That's the only way we can manage her.)

R2: "Good luck, Shana."

Shana: "Do you mean it for real?"

Lavitz: "D, Dart! Don't be so silly! Mom. Shana is Dart's sweetheart."

Dart: "What!?"

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh, please excuse me. But if you don't make it  
clear, it hurts her."

Dart: "I, I will say so from now on."

Shana: "Does it mean...I am your girlfriend?"

Dart: (I said it, because otherwise, Lavitz would be in trouble.)

Lavitz's Mother: "Lavitz, please find somebody like her so that I can hold a  
grandchild in my arms. You are not a child anymore."

Lavitz: "Yeah, I know, I know."

Lavitz's Mother: "And, you'll stay here today, honey?"

Lavitz: "Well, I was commanded to defend Hoax. So, I have to leave as soon  
as...."

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh well, I understand. But you can have at least lunch can't  
you? It'll be ready soon, honey."

Shana: "I'll give you a hand!"

Lavitz's Mother: "Oh, there's no need.... But, then again, maybe...."

Shana: "My pleasure!"

[Shana and Lavitz' mother go into the kitchen.]

Lavitz: "Well, what can we do till lunch? The lunch is not ready yet. What  
are we gonna do?"

R1 --> Shall we help them?

R2 --> We should practice with our swords.

R3 --> Why don't we take a nap.  
R4 --> Show me around your house.

R1: "Shall we help them?"

Lavitz: "Can you cook?"

Dart: "Of course! Otherwise, I couldn't travel alone for five years."

Lavitz: "Hmm! And what kind of dishes do you make?"

Dart: "I can grill a thick piece of meat. It's the best!"

Lavitz: "That's it? Let's leave the cooking to Shana and Mom."

Dart: "You think so? But Shana was always a bad cook."

Lavitz: "Better than you."

R2: "We should practice with our swords."

Lavitz: "Hey Hey Hey!!"

Dart: "What's wrong?"

Lavitz: "Are you gonna swing your sword around in my house!?"

Dart: "What's wrong with that? You have such a big house."

Lavitz: "It's not right!!"

Dart: "Just kidding.... Tut!"

Lavitz: "I heard that! What is that tut about!?"

Dart: "It's all in your head."

R3: "Why don't we take a nap?"

Lavitz: "..."

Dart: "What's wrong Lavitz?"

Lavitz: "Dart, act like a man."

Dart: "Lack of sleep is bad for our skin. Every young lady knows that. Okay, I'll be more serious."

[R4 is the option that needs to be picked.]

Dart: "Show me around your house. This is the first time I've been in such a huge house."

Lavitz: "There is nothing interesting, but we can at least kill some time. Walk around wherever you like and I'll tell you about it."

[They enter the first upstairs room.]

Lavitz: "This is my room."

Dart: "There is a cut in the pillar. Were you swinging your sword or something?"

Lavitz: "No. I was measuring my height."

Dart: "Lavitz was a kid once?"

Lavitz: "What do you mean?"

[They enter the second room.]

Lavitz: "It was my parents' room. It's been my mom's room since my father passed away in the war."

[They enter the library.]

Lavitz: "This is the library. There are many books on strategy. Are you interested in that, Dart?"

Dart: "It's my weak point."

[Lavitz starts pushing a roll-ladder.]

Dart: "What are you doing?"

Lavitz: "Come here."

[He climbs up.]

Lavitz: "I'll show you my treasure."

Dart: "'Treasure'?"

[Dart climbs out onto the roof.]

Lavitz: "Here is my treasure. Please take a look at it."

[Dart can see Indels Castle in the sunlight.]

Dart: "I see...it's a nice view of Indels Castle from here."

Lavitz: "This is what I saw everyday when I was young. I grew up thinking... 'I'll be an admired knight just like my father and I'll protect this country!'"

Dart: "Your dream came true."

Lavitz: "Yes, but the reality was much harder than I imagined back then. I feel all the more strongly how great my father was. To protect this country I would tear the flesh from my body. It's the same passion you have towards Shana."

Dart: "I just...can't hold back."

Lavitz: "Because you know the importance of Shana's life, you can risk your own. You were not a foolish daredevil when you ventured into Hellena. Serdio is covered in war clouds now. You are the only one who can protect Shana. You know that, don't you?"

Dart: "Yeah."



Voice: "Dart! Lavitz! The food is ready!"

Lavitz: "Well, the princess needs us."

[Lavitz goes inside.]

Dart: "'Princess'.... She is like a baby sister to me."

[They eat lunch.]

Lavitz: "As always, your meals are delicious, Mom."

Lavitz's Mother: "It's such a nice thing to hear. But I'll be even happier if you settle down with a bride soon."

Lavitz: "Um...Dart, Shana. We need to buy some things before we leave. Let's go!"

[As they go to leave town, a woman bumps into them.]

Martel: "Hey! Watch yourself!! Are you blind or what!?"

Dart: "What do you mean!? You're the one who bumped into me!"

Martel: "Don't make up excuses. Behave like a man!"

Shana: "Don't yell! It's true!"

Martel: "Can you be quiet? The baby's crying."

Shana: "Oh! Sorry. I was too loud. Oh, poor baby! She is scared, isn't she?"

Martel: "Well we gotta go baby. There is no time to waste."

[Martel leaves.]

Dart: "What was that?"

Lavitz: "I don't know."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 09 - Town of Hoax HX01 |  
o-----o

[West of Bale is Hoax, a giant fortress on the battlefield.]

Lavitz: "Let's go to the HQ first. Kaiser from the Eighth Knighthood must be waiting for us."

Shana: "Is this really a town? It looks like a fortress."

Dart: "The war changed it."

Lavitz: "That's true.... Nobody wanted it, but it couldn't be avoided. Let's focus on our defenses now."

[The party heads into the building under the hotel.]

Lavitz: "Kaiser! Long time no see!"

Kaiser: "Lavitz! Welcome! I see your Knighthood was..."

Lavitz: "Yeah, it was my mistake. But I won't let the dreams of my company end in death and be in vain. I'll end the war and unify Serdio! I will!"

Kaiser: "Hmm, we cannot stop until we make our dreams come true."

Lavitz: "Yeah! Now! I brought you two powerful helpers, Dart and Shana."

Kaiser: "Oh! You are the famous guy who rescued Lavitz! I am Kaiser, the head of the Eighth Knighthood! Nice to meet you!"

Dart: "Could you inform me of how we stand now?"

Kaiser: "We are still preparing for the raid of Sandoras. What I am concerned about is the information that they are using a Dragon."

Lavitz: "It's better to fortify here and see how they move, rather than attacking a Dragon that we don't know about."

Dart: "Then it'll be up to how fast we can spot the approach of the enemy."

Kaiser: "Great. Indeed you are right! Dart, Lavitz, why don't you be the guard at night? Having Shana too is not a good idea. Can you prepare the meals for the knights?"

Shana: "Preparing meals? Okay! Dart, you're going to love it!"

Dart: R1 --> Are you all right?

R2 --> Yes I am looking forward to it.

R1: "Are you all right?"

Lavitz: "I wonder how she will do."

Shana: "Wha, What?! Lavitz's mother gave me a nice compliment!"

Dart: "But in the past...."

Shana: "Fine! I am not gonna cook for Dart!"

Dart: "I, I was just kidding!!"

Kaiser: "Fight a lot that way! Fighting deepens the relationship in many ways!"

R2: "Yes I am looking forward to it."

Lavitz: "I am a bit concerned...."

Shana: "Wha, What?! Lavitz's mother gave me a compliment!"

Lavitz: "I guess it may be edible...."

Shana: "I don't like what Lavitz said."

Lavitz: "I can enjoy and eat any food. Just make a lot."

Shana: "I don't like what Dart said so much either."

Kaiser: "I don't care about the taste. Edible is enough. Just salt is enough for flavor!"

Shana: "Even Mr. Kaiser too."

Lavitz: "Kaiser, why are you stirring things up even more?"

Kaiser: "I thought I was trying to relax her!! Now, that settles the matter. I want Dart and the others to go look around Hoax. The night guards have to know the place. After you look around, come back to me. Stay with me, Lavitz. I want to go over the battle conditions with you."

Dart: "Now, shall we?"

Lavitz: "Get along with each other."

Dart: "Yeah, yeah."

[Dart goes back to the war meeting room later on.]

Kaiser: "Did you see enough? I will take you to the guard position."

Dart: R1 --> Not yet.

R2 --> We are fine now.

R1: "Not yet."

Kaiser: "I see. We haven't finished the strategic meeting yet."

Lavitz: "Could you go see around a little more?"

[Pick R2:]

Dart: "We are fine now."

Kaiser: "We have just finished the strategic meeting. Now, I'll take you to your position. I want to ask both of you to guard the back gate. It's at the end of the stairs."

[They go to the stairs outside and find the on-duty guard.]

Dart: "I am here to replace you. You can trust us."

Soldier: "Yes, sir."

[The soldier leaves.]

Dart: "If Sandora attacks, it will be a night raid."

Lavitz: "We cannot relax till morning. Rest while it's still light."

[They both rest until it's nighttime.]

Dart: "It's strangely quiet tonight. If the Dragon comes near, we can easily tell."

Lavitz: "Why is that?"

Dart: "There are those in the forest. Nocturnal owls are hooting. It's the proof that nobody is in the forest. So, I'm gonna go grab something."

Lavitz: "Worrying about Shana?"

Dart: "It's not that."

Lavitz: "Bring me back something."

[Dart hits the stairs and the hooting stops.]

Dart: "The owls...."

Voice: "AHHHHHH!!"

[Flaming arrows fly into Hoax. Kaiser runs out.]

Kaiser: "Knighthood, advance!! Fortify the gate!! You take care of the casualties!!"

Soldier: "Y, Yes, sir!!"

Lavitz: "We'll counter them!!"

Dart: "Yeah!!"

[Imperial Sandora enemies start attacking, but Dart and Lavitz unmake them. On top of the wall--]

Dart: "!!!"

[--an elite soldier appears, disposing of the wall guard.]

Sandora Elite: "Is this the battle HQ for the front lines of Basil!? What a weak setup!"

Dart: "I will guard the top!"

Lavitz: "Gotcha! Trust me to handle here!"

Sandora Elite: "What guts you have, coming alone like that!!"

[Lavitz kills the enemy and runs up the stairs to Dart.]

Lavitz: "I am here!! I got those guys at the bottom!!"

Sandora Elite: "Humph! One or two doesn't make any difference."

Dart: "Big talkers are usually weak."

[They kill the Sandora Elite. Below, a soldier is getting beaten up by a ridiculously huge attacker.]

Soldier: "AAGGHH!!"

Lavitz: "What is that giant!?"

Knight of Basil: "It's Gi, Giganto!!"

Dart: "Giganto?"

[They run down to face it.]

Dart: "Lavitz!!"

Lavitz: "I heard about it, but he is real!! The ones who fought so far were no match for him!!"

Dart: "Well he is still not a Dragon! Go!!"

[They defeat Kongol, but Dart gets knocked back when he tries to deal the coup de grace. The woman who saved him at the very beginning of the game flies in on odd wings, and points her sword at Dart.]

Woman: "Wake up! Dragoon of the Red-Eye Dragon!"

Dart: "!?"

[A red light fills Dart.]

Dart: "Ahhhh!?"

[The spirit of the Red-Eye Dragon swoops around and beats Kongol down. Dart looks at himself and is now in similarly-shaped armor as the woman's, only red and fiery.]

Dart: "What on earth is...."

Soldier of Imperial Sandora: "The, these are not Humans!!"

[The remaining soldier flees.]

Lavitz: "Dart, you.... What happened to you!?"

Dart: "I don't know.... I don't know what happened to me!?"

[The woman walks over.]

Rose: "The Knight of the Dragon, the Dragoon was born."

Kongol: "UGH...."

Rose: "I am surprised you didn't die."

Kongol: "Giganto don't die! Giganto will pay you back!!"

[Kongol retreats, also. Shana runs out.]

Shana: "Dart!!"

Dart: "You are safe."

[Dart's fiery-red armor fades away.]

Shana: "What happened!?"

Dart: "Seeing Shana's face.... Makes me relieved...."

[He collapses.]

Shana: "Dart!!"

Lavitz: "Are you alright!?"

[In his semi-conscious state, Dart can hear his comrades talking.]

Shana: "What are you to Dart? What did you do to him?"

Rose: "I was only...."

Lavitz: "Cut it out! Both of you!!"

[Dart wakes up on a bed.]

Rose: "I should be thanked, so why do I have to be yelled at?"

Dart: "Ah...."

Lavitz: "Have you come to?"

Dart: "I, I was...."

Shana: "I'm glad you woke up...."

Dart: "You, you are...."

Rose: "Rose. Nice to see you again."

Shana: "Do you know Dart?"

Rose: "I told you. I just saved his life. Well...not only once."

Shana: "I want to hear it from Dart's own mouth."

Lavitz: "You explain. I don't understand."

Dart: R1 --> She saved my life.

R2 --> She is an important person to me.

R1: "She saved my life. Thanks to Rose, I was able to make it to Seles."

R2: "She is an important person to me."

Rose: "Are you seducing me?"

Dart: "No, no way! I couldn't make it even to Seles without you  
Rose."

Shana: "Then, the person who saved you from the Dragon was...."

Dart: "Yeah. It's her. Talking about being saved, I didn't even thank  
you yet."

Rose: "I don't need any thanks. I wanted to do it."

Dart: "I see. But why are you here? It is too fishy to be a coincidence."

Rose: "I followed you because I was fascinated by this artifact that you  
own...the Dragoon Spirit of the Red-Eye Dragon."

Dart: "This.... This light is!?"

Rose: "You 'deserve' to rule Dragons. This light shows the true evidence. From the time the Dragoon Spirit starts to shine, you have to accept your fate as a Dragoon. Just like me."

Dart: "I didn't know there was such power concealed in my father's memento."

Shana: "You saved him because you knew it from the beginning."

Rose: "I didn't know it. It was a test to see if he could be a Dragoon. If you couldn't, you would be dead now."

Lavitz: "Why do you know about such things? You know too much about things nobody could know."

Rose: "It's better than ignorance, isn't it?"

Lavitz: "That's true, but yours is not mere knowledge. It's a story in a legend that has been lost. I heard about it from Minister Noish before. The people who led Humans to victory in the Dragon Campaign, they were the Dragoons."

Dart: "But was that the only reason you protected me? Just because I have a Dragoon Spirit?"

Rose: "Honestly, I was surprised myself, but now I know why. You guys look like my dear old friends. They lived in the middle of a turbulent generation, yet they were strong enough to grab their own fate. They knew the way to go, the things to do, the enemy to defeat and the people to protect. I feel the same about you guys, so, I couldn't help doing that. Now you understand me?"

Dart: "Can I ask you one thing? What are they doing now?"

Rose: "Everybody's gone. It's all in the past."

Shana: "I am sorry. I think I was wrong about you, Rose."

Rose: "It's okay. I am used to being hated."

Voice: "Is the head of the Knighthood, Sir Kaiser, in here!? The, The Seventh Fort is under strong attack by Sandoras!!"

Lavitz: "What!?"

[Outside, they find a soldier.]

Knight of Basil: "The Seventh Fort in the Marshland is under the fierce attack of the Dragon! Due to that, the Tenth and Thirteenth Knighthoods are almost overwhelmed! Survivors are still responding!"

Lavitz: "Where did it come from!?"

Knight of Basil: "From the forest over the Volcano Villude! It seems there is a nest there for the Dragon!!"

[Kaiser appears.]

Kaiser: "Gigantos and Dragons. It's not a fight between Humans. If we don't defeat the Dragon, we don't have a future!"

Lavitz: "Summon the rest of the knights! We will assault the Dragon's Nest!"

Rose: "The Knighthood has the advantage of numbers, but they are only human. Humans cannot defeat a Dragon. If it continues, Basil will be annihilated."

Lavitz: "We don't know until we try!"

Rose: "Do you think a wasted death is honorable or something? But Dragoons can defeat him.... Dart. You should understand this. We have a different existence. We are beyond Humans."

Lavitz: "That's right...Dragoon!! Dragoons, which were said to have governed the Dragons, can fight against the Dragon!!"

Dart: R1 --> Maybe, I can do it now.

R2 --> I still don't know...

R1: "Maybe, I can do it now. I felt, the power of the Dragon in me. I'll do it! I believe in this power!"

R2: "I still don't know.... I still don't know what it is to be a Dragoon."

Rose: "You feel the power, right? That is the power of the Dragon born in you."

Dart: "This is...I feel it! It's a hot...power in me! I'll do it! I believe in this power!"

Kaiser: "It makes me feel relieved.... There is nobody left who can fight in the Eighth Knighthood. Dart, Rose...it seems you are the only people we can count on..."

Lavitz: "Kaiser!! Yo, you...your wound is open!!"

Kaiser: "I am all right. Dart, Rose. The Kingdom of Basil is finished unless we defeat the Dragon. So...?"

Dart: "You can trust me. I will fight for you, too."

Rose: "I'll go too. ... .. It doesn't seem to be enough if it is only Dart and the others."

Kaiser: "Shana.... You...should stay."

Shana: "No, I am going! I can help the other people too!"

[A roaring sound can be heard in the distance.]

Rose: "The Green Tusked Dragon, Feyrbrand...."

Dart: "It brings back the fear I felt before."

Rose: "The real fear has not even begun yet."

[Later, Dart goes to leave and overhears two knights talking above him.]



Knight A: "It was super!!"

Knight B: "What about it?"

Knight A: "That Dart fella, yesterday he wore unique armor and defeated Kongol!!"

Knight B: "With Dart, Imperial Sandora is not even a match as our enemy!!"

Knight A: "Dart is the messiah of the Kingdom of Basil!"

Rose: "Messiah, huh. You cannot be called a real Dragoon getting stunned like that, by bursting with the power."

Dart: R1 --> ...

R2 --> Then, tell me, Rose.

R1: "..."

Rose: "I'll be here for a while. Go prepare for the departure."

R2: "Then, tell me, Rose. How should I fight as a Dragoon."

Rose: "Well, let's begin."

[They start a practice fight.]

Rose: "Let's begin. What would you like to know about Dragons?"

Dart: R3 --> 'Dragoon Transformations.'

R4 --> 'Dragoon Additions.'

R5 --> 'Dragoon Magic.'

R6 --> 'Not much.'

R3 (Rose): "Dragoon Transformations need spiritual power, Spirit Points (SP). You can accumulate SP by attacking enemies. Let's try. Fight with me. Come on! Yes, keep it up. You accumulated SP. When your SP is full, a transformation command appears. Selecting that allows you become a Dragoon. Now, transform yourself. Do you understand how to transform?"  
['I want to try it again' / 'Yes, I got it.'] "For quicker transformations, change the setting on the system screen. Select 'config', highly 'Morph', then select 'Short'. That's all."

R4 (Rose): "First, transform yourself into a Dragoon. You emit power all at once with Dragoon Additions. Charge up your power. Press the x button when the Spirit Meter light reaches the top. When successful, the light continues to revolve & the power is charged accordingly. Now, try. It's okay, one more press. How was it? You got enough?" ['Please let me try again.' / 'Yes. It's enough.']

R5 (Rose): "First, transform yourself to a Dragoon. There are two commands after a transformation, a Dragoon addition & a Dragoon spell. You need a certain MP to use a Dragoon spell. The spells you can use are highlighted. There is only one now. Select the spell & then the target. Then you can cast the spell. Now. Let's try. Cast a spell on me. Did you get enough

exercise?" ['Please let me try again.' / 'I'm fine now.']

R6 (Rose): "One more thing. Getting SP by attacking allows your Dragoon Level to increase and you'll have more spell choices. In the end, you can only rely on your own sword. This is what I can teach. After that, it's up to you. I'll be here for a while. Go prepare for the departure."

[Dart goes to leave.]

Rose: "Once we leave the town, I will consider you as a mature Dragoon. I won't teach you how to fight anymore."

Dart: R1 --> I still don't have confidence....

R2 --> Okay, I'll be all right.

R1: "I still don't have confidence...."

Rose: "I see.... I'll be here for a while. Go prepare for the departure."

R2: "Okay, I'll be all right."

[The party leaves town and heads for the Marsh.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 10 - Marshland MRS1 |  
o-----o

[The party arrives at the Basil fort and finds it still under seige by the Imperial Sandora.]

Dart: "Oh my god!! !!"

[A soldier comes up behind Dart.]

Soldier of Imperial Sandora: "Are you from Basil!?"

Dart: R1 --> I won't let you have your way!

R2 --> We should retreat at once.

R1: [The fight begins.]

R2 (Soldier of Imperial Sandora): "!?"

[Dart flees.]

[Dart defeats the soldier and another comes over.]

Soldier of Imperial Sandora [2]: "You bastard!!"

Dart: R1 --> Get out of my way!

R2 --> Let's reposition ourselves.

[Dart defeats the soldier.]

Soldier of Imperial Sandora [3]: "I won't let you leave alive!!"

Dart: R1 --> Is that so!?

R2 --> We have to retreat.

[Dart defeats the third soldier.]

Soldier of Imperial Sandora [4]: "I'll chop you up!!"

Dart: R1 --> Make my day!

R2 --> Doesn't look good.

[Dart kills the fourth soldier.]

Soldier of Imperial Sandora [5]: "I will stop them by myself!!"

Dart: R1 --> I won't let them!

R2 --> We can't.

[Dart kills the fifth soldier, and a Commander appears.]

Commander: "I won't let you go any further!!"

Dart: R1 --> Is that all?

R2 --> No more?

[Dart kills the Commander.]

Dart: "I wonder if inside the fortress is safe?"

[The inside is silent -- all dead or dying from poisonous mists.]

Dart: "Oh my god...."

[They find a Basil knight writhing on the floor.]

Lavitz: "Hang on! We beat the Sandoras!"

Head of 10th Knighthood: "Ah, Ahh, Sir Lavitz. Watch out...for the Dragon's...  
breath. This...is...." [Obtain: Wargod's Amulet]

[He dies.]

Lavitz: "We will wreak your revenge upon them...."

[Now that the fate of the Tenth Knighthood is known, the party heads off to Volcano Villude, the buffer between the Dragon's Nest. As they walk...]

Shana: "Yeek!"

Dart: "What's wrong, Shana?"

Shana: "I'm f, fine. My foot was stuck in the mud, that's all. See. Oh no!"

Dart: "Did you twist your ankle?"

Shana: "It's nothing...."

Dart: "You can't stand up, can you? Come on, I'll give you a piggy back ride."

Shana: "But, it's embarrassing."

Dart: "What are you talking about? I used to give you piggy back rides when you were little, remember?"

Shana: "Uh huh, thanks!"

[She gets on his back.]

Shana: "I'm such trouble aren't I?"

Dart: "I don't think so."

Shana: "I guess...I shouldn't stayed in Hoax?"

Dart: "Are you serious?"

Shana: "No, it's not so...I guess I had a bit of a weak moment.... You know what, I have more confidence now. I can fight to help everybody. I'm not a drag on others, but I still cannot fight like Rose."

Dart: "Shana, you have something only you can do, right? You don't need to pretend to be strong. Besides, you can rely on me more. Like in the old days..."

Lavitz: "Dart! Is Shana all right!?"

Shana: "I'm okay now!"

[Shana gets off.]

Shana: "The pain is gone. Let's go everybody!"

[Up next is...]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 11 - Volcano Villude VLV1 |  
o-----o

[In the swelter of the volcano, the ground shakes as the part passes through.]

Dart: "What's that!?"

Lavitz: "Is that an eruption of the volcano!?"

Rose: "No, it's not. That is...Fire Bird. It's bad timing, showing up now. We still have to deal with the Dragon."

Dart: "Can we just let it go?"

Rose: "It's up to him."

[The Fire Bird by the lava squawks at Dart.]

Dart: "He saw us! Run!!"

[They run down the path a ways.]

Shana: "It seems we lost him."

Dart: "Good. Let's move on."

[As they pass through a river of lava, Shana kneels on the ground.]

Shana: "!? What...is this feeling? It's...calling me!?"

[She runs off.]

Dart: "Shana! Where are you going!?"

[Dart follows her to a room with a giant, creepy-looking statue halfway submerged in the lava.]

Dart: "You were 'being called' by this?"

Shana: "I don't know. But when I came here, I didn't hear the voice anymore."

Dart: "Is that alive?"

Lavitz: "Looks like a stone statue."

Shana: "Don't go near it! I feel...something's wrong."

Rose: "Listen to Shana. This Virage is still alive."

Dart: "Virage...?"

Rose: "You don't know about it? Okay, I'll explain it to you. You know about the Dragon Campaign, right? The Winglies were outnumbered, so they used this creature called Virage as their trump card in the war. Just as Humans used Dragons, Winglies used Virage."

Shana: "I thought the Dragon Campaign was over 11,000 years ago. How can this still be alive?"

[Part of the "statue"'s hand moves.]

Dart: "!!!"

Rose: "I would say, it's due to the hatred of Humans, or a vendetta against us Dragons. We gotta settle this."

Dart: "Or let's run!!!"

[The Virage takes the initiative, so running is impossible. They defeat it anyhow, and Dart pushes it into the lava to die. Lavitz is near the edge and almost gets a faceful of the stuff.]

Lavitz: "Whoa! It's dangerous here! Let's go back!"

Dart: "Come on! Shana. Are you alright!?"

[Rose looks at the sinking Virage.]

Dart: "Rose! Rose! Run!"

[She walks away from the edge and they continue hear a voice outside.]

???: "Heeey! Is anybody there?"

Dart: "Did you hear something?"

???: "Heeey! Heeelp!"

Shana: "Look, over there!!!"

[A man's clothing is caught on a branch by the cliff.]

Dart: "It's a man!"

???: "Help me!! My foot slipped and I fell!!"

Dart: "We got you!"

[Dart pulls him up.]

???: "Phew! Thanks! Really!! I didn't think I would make it!!"

Shana: "It was really \*huff huff\* good."

???: "Yeah, thanks! I can't thank you enough, but please at least take this!"

Shana: "Oh don't! We can't accept such an expensive item."

???: "Yes, you have to! You folks saved my life! I'll feel bad if you folks don't take it!"

Dart: "Take it. Once decided, it's hard to take it back. It's a man thing."

Shana: "Well, thank you." [Obtain: Sapphire Pin]

Dabas: "I'm Dabas of Lohan. I was told I could find a 'Burning Gem' around here so I came, and look what happened to me! By the way, I am an antique dealer. If you happen to be in Lohan, why don't ya drop by. Later!"

[Dabas leaves.]

Shana: "He is funny."

[The party soon runs into the Fire Bird.]

Dart: "!!!"

Lavitz: "Fire Bird!"

Dart: "Shana! Can we go to the exit!?"

Shana: "No! It's in flames!"

Dart: "I guess we gotta fight!"

[The kill Fire Bird.]

Dart: "\*Huff Huff\* It was a hot fight...."

[It's only a skip and a jump to the Nest of Dragon from there.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 12 - Nest of Dragon NSD1 |  
o-----o

[The nest is a murky place in the forest. Spores of poison float all around.]

Rose: "Guys? Don't you feel something? This forest is contaminated by the Dragon's poison."

Lavitz: "I see. That's why the Sandoras don't have a defense in this forest. A normal person cannot be exposed to this 'poison' for a long time. It's a natural defense."

Shana: "Oh my?"

Dart: "What's wrong!?"

Shana: "I felt a little bit dizzy, that's all."

Lavitz: "I guess it is hard for a woman."

Rose: "Oh, I am a woman too."

Lavitz: "You are special."

Rose: "'Special', huh? Fine. I don't capitalize on a woman's frailty anyway."

Shana: "I don't mean to do...oh no. I'm okay. See? Rose is fine too. But, I... I'm sorry. I need to go rest a little."

[Shana walks off.]

Dart: "Shana!"

[Shana sits down by a warped tree.]

Dart: "Are you all right?"

Shana: "Uh huh. Don't worry. I don't feel sick anymore. Besides, I think I got used to the air in this place."

Dart: "Then, can you go with us?"

Shana: "Sure. If I fall down here, there would be no meaning to me coming with you."

Lavitz: "Indeed, we can say the war is in our hands, because the Kaisers cannot make a move."

Dart: "Shana.... Please don't leave us like that. We don't know what awaits us."

Shana: "Sorry."

Dart: "Now, let's move on."

[Dart and Shana walk off.]

Rose: "They are playing brother and sister."

Lavitz: "Yup, they are always like that."

[The party walks over a web-covered hole and--]

Dart: "!? Wow!"

[--falls through, of course. At the bottom, they wait for Shana to come to.]

Dart: "Good, you've come around."

Shana: "Yes. I think...I'm fine."

Dart: "Where are we?"

Rose: "In the nest of the dragon."

Dart: "Well, at least we don't need to look for Feyrbrand anymore."

Rose: "What confidence you have. Is that because you are a Dragoon?"

Dart: "I guess."

Shana: "Guys, look at this. There is still pure water left in this forest. At least the entire forest is not spoiled."

Dart: "Let's go. If we defeat the monster, the forest will be saved."

[A knight is at the nest's end, standing by the upward climb to the exit.]

Lavitz: "Who is this!?"

????: "Is that you, Lavitz?! It's so ironic to find you venturing here!!"

Lavitz: "You are...Graham!!"

Dart: "Do you know him?"

Lavitz: "I will never forget him!! He used to be the head of the Second Knighthood of Basil...Graham! The man who used to be my father's best man!!"

Graham: "Welcome, Lavitz. You have become a knight fulfilling the wishes of your late father, Servi."

Lavitz: "Don't you ever mention my father's name!"

Graham: "Are you still carrying that grudge after more than a dozen years for my betrayal of your father!?"

Lavitz: "That's not all!! You betrayed King Albert!! You betrayed every single person I know!!"

Graham: "Is that the wrath of a patriotic knight, or a man full of vengeance?"

Lavitz: "Both!! Graham!! I now get to avenge my father, who trusted you and died in vain!"

Graham: "'Get revenge'...huh? Try! See if you can truly best me and my newly obtained power!"

[He glows with a green Dragoon Spirit.]

Graham: "Emerge!! The power of the Dragon!!"

Lavitz: "You...you are a Dragoon!?"

Rose: "It shouldn't be a surprise. Only the Dragoons can manipulate Dragons. Behind the Dragon, there should be...."



[Feyrbrand appears.]

Graham: "This is the power I obtained!!"

Rose: "Obtaining that power is not an easy matter. You, where did you get the Dragoon Spirit?"

Graham: "I'm amazed there is someone in Basil who knows about this. Fine. You too will know before you die. His Majesty Doel got all his power and intelligence from Emperor Diaz."

Rose: "Is this some kind of dream? Emperor Diaz died 11,000 years ago. With the name of the Holy Imperial Gloriano."

Graham: "If this is a dream, how can you explain what you are about to see? Come! I will give you a chance to avenge your father! If you have the courage to fight against the legendary Dragoon!"

[They defeat Graham and Feyrbrand; the former lies dying.]

Graham: "Ug..... I got a deep gash. You have Servi's strength. My efforts were to no avail. I even used betrayal to obtain this power...."

Lavitz: "I still...don't understand. Why did you betray my father? You were not like this."

Graham: "Nobody could be stronger than your father. That was the only thing I could never conquer. I had...admiration for him, as a mate...and as a friend. But time goes by and it turned into this feeling.... This fear, from realizing the limits of your ability.... This fear...that goes nowhere. The only thing you can do is curse yourself for weakness...."

Lavitz: "But you couldn't overcome your 'fear' by defecting to Doel, you needed to overcome my father!"

Graham: "There was...an alternative. If only I could obtain a new power, I could be equal to, or surpass him.... That was...the Dragoon Spirit I got from His Majesty Doel. Lavitz...live strong. Now...I can go...to be with Servi...."

[The Dragoon Spirit shines and Graham disappears.]

Rose: "He is lucky to be dead now. Greed for power eventually conquers you. Unleashed power generates only sorrow. He should've known that. He was lucky to die now and avoid even more sorrow."

[The Dragoon Spirit appears in front of Lavitz.]

Lavitz: "Wha...what is this!?"

Rose: [Such a coincidence...! It can't be...or is this fate!?!]

Dart: "Lavitz, maybe you too are...."

Rose: "Dart is right, the Dragoon Spirit of the Jade Dragoon recognized you as the next master."

Lavitz: "I am...a Dragoon? I deserve to rule Dragons?"

Rose: "Not only do you 'deserve,' but you have an obligation to accept your

fate as a Dragoon, don't you?"

Lavitz: "It's what Greham left for me. I understand. I accept it! The fate of a Dragoon! I will use this power for justice! Like Dart and Rose!"

Rose: [Use for justice? Huh!]

[Lavitz acquires the Dragoon Spirit of the Jade Dragon.]

Shana: "Good for you, Lavitz. Ah...."

Dart: "Shana!?"

Shana: "I can't...breathe."

Dart: "Too much poison!?"

Lavitz: "We cannot make it over Villude carrying Shana. Then, we have to go to Lohan!"

Dart: "Lohan.... That commercial town!?"

Lavitz: "Yes, that's it. I heard there is a great doctor there!"

Dart: "Hurry!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 13 - Commercial Town of Lohan CTL1 |  
o-----o

[Dart walks into Lohan, carrying Shana.]

Dart: "What a crowd, and we are in the middle of a war."

Shana: "It's true... If I were fine, it would be...fun..."

Dart: "You'll get well soon!"

[Dart takes her to the doctor's house.]

Sanator: "I couldn't believe it was Dragon's poison until I saw it with my own eyes. I have never seen such symptoms. There is nothing wrong with the body...at least that's how it seems. But her consciousness has closed inward after she arrived here. It seems the mind is poisoned, not the body. I don't think the clinic can help her. I'm sorry, but in this condition, it could be a week, if she is lucky."

Dart: "Can't you do something!?"

Sanator: "I'll do everything I can. What was a cute girl doing with a legendary monster?"

Lavitz: "She fought against it to save the country! Think hard! Is there anything you can do!?"

Sanator: "Hold on. If we can get some Dragoni Plant, she may survive."

Dart: "Really!?"

Sanator: "I read it in a secret heirloom book. The problem is, as with Dragons,

Dragoni Plant exists only in legend. I cannot say for sure if it really exists."

Dart: "Even so.... We cannot wait like this, doing nothing! Let's go look for Dragoni Plant on our own! We at least might be able to find something in this town!"

Lavitz: "Lohan is a commercial town where everybody is welcome. There should be some information here!"

Sanator: "Although it is temporary, I will try to stanch the poisoning. I am not called the best doctor in Serdio for nothing! I will rise to the occasion!"

[The party stumbles upon Dabas' antique shop.]

Dabas: "Welcome...? Hey!!"

Dart: "Dabas!"

Lavitz: "It's the goofy merchant from the other day!"

Dabas: "I'm glad you folks are here! Thanks for Villude, really! Now I can run my business! So, what do you want!? You can find anything in Dabas' Antiques.

Dart: "Do you carry herbs too?"

Dabas: "You got it! I have everything! From extremely rare medicine to secret magical medicine!"

Dart: "Have you heard of the Dragoni Plant? I heard it is a very rare herb."

Dabas: "Oh! The Dragoni Plant!"

Dart: "You have it!?"

Dabas: "No."

Dart: "Dabas!!"

Dabas: "Oh no don't get mad! I was just kidding! But, let me think harder, I remember hearing about it somewhere. Hold on a sec. Well, in this secret notebook.... Yes! It's in here! It says, North of the poisoned forest. Past the troublesome plant. Observed Dragoni Plant in back of the Shrine!"

Lavitz: "It reminds me.... I saw a strange plant in the back of the forest when Shana took a rest."

Rose: "Oh, the one that became a monster because of the Dragon's poison.... But you cannot get past it unless you purify it with something."

Lavitz: "How about the Spring Water underground!? That might help the plant."

Dart: "That's it! Thanks Dabas!"

[They run out.]

Dabas: "Hey!? What about shopping!? That's all!?"

[They start to leave.]

Street Vendor: "Hey you! Hey classy brother! I have something you'll like!"

Dart: "That reminds me, we need something to carry the Spring Water. Let's have a look."

Street Vendor: "That's my man! You have a sharp eye! I guarantee they are good buys!"

Dart: "I want a bottle to put water in. Do you have one?"

Street Vendor: "Sure sure! This one's durable and the best quality you can get!"

Dart: "How much?"

Street Vendor: "\*Grin\* ...Surprise! It's a super bargain! How about 10000000000G!"

Lavitz: "Let's look somewhere else."

Street Vendor: "Hey, wait a minute! I was just kidding! Don't take me so seriously."

Dart: "How much is the real price then?"

Street Vendor: "Yeah! It's about 3000G! Why don't ya buy it?"

Dart: R1 --> I'll take it.

R2 --> It's, too expensive!

R1: "I'll take it."

Street Vendor: "Yup! Thanks!" [Obtain: Water Bottle]

Lavitz: "Now we are ready."

[They run off.]

Street Vendor: "Hee hee, Thanks."

R2: "T, too expensive!"

Street Vendor: "Hm... Well, I'll give you a discount. How about 2200G! 2200G!"

Dart: R3 --> I'll take it.

R4 --> It's still too much.

R3: [Same as R1]

R4: "It's still too much."

Street Vendor: "I'll go down to 1000G!"

Dart: R5 --> "I'll take it."

R6 --> "Can't you do better than that?"

R5: [Same as R1]

R6: "Can't you do better than that?"

Street Vendor: "500G!"

Dart: R7 --> I'll take it.

R8 --> Drop it once more!

R7: [Same as R1]

R8: "Drop it once more!"

Street Vendor: "Darn! I'm giving it away. How about 100G!"

Dart: R9 --> I'll take it.

R10 --> ...

R9: [Same as R1]

R10: "..."

Street Vendor: "Hee...hee...hee hee hee hee! I can't win! Take it!  
It's free!"

Dart: "Well.... If you insist. I'll take it. Thanks!" [Obtain: Water  
Bottle]

[The party leaves for the Nest of Dragon, for the last time, hopefully.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 14 - Nest of Dragon NSD2 |  
o-----o

[The party goes back to the freshwater spring.]

Dart: "Let's hope for the best with this water."

Lavitz: "Hmmm, according to Dabas, we have to get rid of that plant in order  
to get to the shrine with Dragoni Plants." [Obtain: Life Water]

Dart: "Come on, let's go."

[They find the plant blocking the path and kill it.]

Dart: "The plant is wilting. We can go now!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 15 - Shrine of Shirley SOS1 |  
o-----o

[The party enters the shrine, and Rose looks up above the door.]

Rose: "That is...."

Dart: "What's up? A scuplture of a dragon?"

Lavitz: "Dragon.... I hope nothing bad will happen."

Rose: "Take out your Dragoon Spirits."

[The Spirits all shine.]

Dart: "They are resonating together."

Lavitz: "It means there is a Dragoon in there!?"

Rose: "Go see it with your own eyes."

Dart: "Let's move on."

[Outdoors, the party finds an odd mechanism.]

Dart: "What is this...?"

Lavitz: "There are three rotary plates, all with numbers from one to five. It seems like a kind of apparatus with a numerical lock. You try, Dart."

Dart: "The first number is.... [input] The second number is.... [input] The third number is..."

[Nothing happens.]

Dart: "I guess it's wrong."

Lavitz: "I guess it doesn't work unless we use the correct numbers."

[Ahead, a treasure-chest trap drops them into a mine cart and they end up back at the beginning, in the water.]

Dart: "Wh, what was that?"

[Using the numbers he saw on the cart ride, Dart inputs the numbers into the rotary dials, opening a secret entrance. They head towards the back of the shrine when someone throws knives at them; they dodge.]

Dart: "!?"

Lavitz: "!?"

[A man in theatrical getup jumps down.]

Drake: "It's amazing you made it through the traps! But your luck is over! 'Cuz I won't let you go further! Come on! Draw your sword!"

Dart: "Wait! We are just here to look for the Dragoni Plant! We don't want to fight!"

Drake: "You want me to believe that!? You must be after the treasure, aren't ya!?"

Dart: "That's not it!"

Rose: "It's quicker to beat him."

Drake: "You thieves!! Now you reveal your true selves!! Prepare yourselves!!"

[The party defeats Drake.]

Drake: "I have to protect Shirley or...."

[A ghost appears.]

Shirley: "Drake...it's okay now. People with Dragoon Spirits. Why are you disturbing my quiet moment?"

Lavitz: "What are you!?"

Dart: "We are not here for that! We are here to save our friend's life!"

Shirley: "Life of your friend?"

Rose: "Do you remember me?"

Shirley: "You are.... Rose, aren't you...? Oh...I understand. You have been on your sad journey since then."

Rose: "You too, Shirley."

Dart: "Won't you spare me some Dragoni Plant!? Shana is suffering from Dragon's poison!"

Shirley: "Dragon? Oh, they are still clinging to life. ...Unfortunately, I don't have any Dragoni plant."

Dart: "Then, what about Shana?"

Shirley: "There is one way to save her."

Dart: "I'll try anything! Just tell me!"

[Shirley shines with a white Dragoon Spirit.]

Dart: "Dragoon Spirit!?"

Shirley: "A Dragon's poison can be removed with the Dragoon Spirit of a White Silver Dragon, which is filled with healing magic. Now, I will challenge you to see if you deserve this Dragoon Spirit. Shall we begin? Try to overcome me. If you cannot do it, the girl's fate is to die."

[The battle with Shirley begins.]

Shirley: "Dart, Lavitz. Why do you fight?"

R1 --> To protect those we love.

R2 --> For pride and honor.

R1: "Dart. Bare your heart to me."

[She changes into Shana.]

Shirley: "Dart, I have been waiting. Why did you leave without saying a word?"

R3 --> It's none of your business.

R4 --> To pursue the Black Monster.

R2: "Lavitz, show me what you believe." [Lavitz section starts.]

R3: "It's awful! Am I that much less important to you?"

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Dart, I saw your bear heart. However, I cannot give you my spirit. You lost control. Think it over again."

R4: "The Black Monster!? Dart, what are you going to do after you find the Black Monster?"

R5 --> Of course, get revenge!

R6 --> I don't know yet.

R5: "Revenge!? Please, forget about revenge and be with me. The Black Monster or me, Dart?"

R7 --> Shana.

R8 --> Black Monster.

R6: "I knew it. You were always like that Dart. You always rush off without thinking about others or the consequences. You won't be able to make it like that."

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Dart, I saw your bear heart. However, I cannot give you my spirit. You lost control. Think it over again."

R7: "Really? Dart, I'm so happy!"

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Lavitz, show me what you believe."

[She changes into King Albert.]

Shirley: "Lavitz! What are you doing here! Forget Shana and go back."

R9 --> Yes, Your Majesty. Coming.

R10 --> That's not like you!

R8: "I see. I understand. I am unable to persuade you."

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Dart, I saw your bear heart. However, I cannot give you my spirit. You lost control. Think it over again."

R9: "A knight is to obey the iron code of chivalry. You mustn't think of yourself. You cannot disobey a king's order no matter what."

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Lavitz, I have seen what you believe. However, I cannot give you my spirit. Try to remember, what you saw in your father. Think it over again."

R10: "Are you disobeying my order? Lavitz! Are you disobeying my order? Choosing one over many?"

R11 --> Shana needs me!

R12 --> Don't command me!

R11: "Lavitz, well said. That's the renown Knight of Serdio. Life is precious whether it's one or many. Help out with Shana."

[Dart's section may start here if you picked R2.]



R12: "You dare!! Are you still a Knight of Serdio!?"

[She changes back into Shirley.]

Shirley: "Lavitz, I have seen what you believe. However, I cannot give you my spirit. Try to remember, what you saw in your father. Think it over again."

[Once you complete Lavitz and Dart's trials, Shirley will ask:]

Shirley: "Dart, advancing will bring truth as well as ordeals. And you still want to go?"

R1 --> No matter what, I will go.

R2 --> I'll save Shana and go home.

R1: "Brave young people, what you'll see is all the truth. Never gaze away. Only total acceptance brings you to the way."

R2: "That is fine. There is no greater bliss than time spent with loved ones. Rebuild your village, raise children, and weave your future. Don't forget your feelings."

Shirley: "Lavitz, I ask you. Who is the most important person for you to protect?"

R1 --> Mother.

R2 --> Lordship.

R1: "It's human to care about parents. You are human before being a knight. Parents care for children and a child yearns for its parent. The bonding makes a human strong. Don't forget you have somebody waiting for you."

R2: "A lord's role is to bring people together and give orders. A knight's role is to serve, and to ensure peace and a safe place for people. The times need you. Never rush to die."

Shirley: "Lastly Rose, I ask you. What does life mean to you?"

R1 --> I've never thought about it.

R2 --> Nothing but sacrifice.

R1: "Rose, I see the end of your agonizing journey. The young man there will awaken the old you, and lead you to the future. Now, illuminate the dark road with my White Silver Dragoon Spirit. The new Dragons!"

R2: [Same as R1]

[The battle ends and Dart gets the White Silver Dragoon Spirit.]

Shirley: "That was beautiful. Take this with you as I promised, but I have one favor to ask. He has protected my peace from countless attempts by bandits. He stood up to you for me. Please save Drake. I don't have an entity so I cannot draw on the power of the spirit."

Dart: "But I don't feel any power holding it like this."

Rose: "Hold it up with the spirit of the Red-Eye Dragoon Spirit."

[The power of the two combined resonates...]

Dart: "This is!?"

Shirley: "Your Red-Eye Dragon draws the healing power of the White Silver Dragoon Spirit."

Drake: "Ah... Ahhhh...."

[...and revivifies the dying Drake.]

Drake: "Am I...alive?"

Shirley: "Good."

Dart: "We can save her with this!"

Shirley: "Dart, gazing at the truth sometimes brings pain, but you will be able to overcome it."

[She nods to Rose and disappears.]

Shirley: "Farewell Rose. I am looking forward to the date our roads of fate cross again."

Dart: "Shirley!?"

Rose: "She is headed to the place where she belongs."

Dart: "Let's go. Shana is waiting."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 16 - Commercial Town of Lohan CTL2 |  
o-----o

[Back at Sanator's...]

Sanator: "Did you find a Dragoni Plant!?"

[Dart puts the White Silver Dragoon Spirit on the bed to show Sanator.]

Dart: "But with this.... We should be able to save her."

[The Spirit shines.]

Sanator: "What!!"

Dart: "Wh, what!?"

Lavitz: "I thought the power cannot be released without the help from another spirit, right?"

Rose: "..."

[Shana wakes up.]

Dart: "Shana!"

Shana: "Dart, what is this?"

Dart: "It's the Dragoon Spirit of the White Silver Dragon. I wonder if Shana is!?"

Lavitz: "A Dragoon!"

Rose: "Otherwise, this much power wouldn't drawn. Shana purged the poison with her own power."

Sanator: "It's true. Her spirit is back in her body. The poison is completely gone!"

Shana: "Dart.... What is going on?"

[Everyone takes out their shining Spirits.]

Dart: "I don't know if it is a coincidence or fate, but you were saved with this power, Shana. Do you feel it? This is the power of the Dragon...the Dragoon."

Shana: "Yes, I feel it. The warm power of a Dragon.... Not only powerful, but very tender."

Sanator: "Ex, Excuse em, it's too bright and I cannot see! Can you do something about it!?"

Shana: "Oh! Sorry!"

[Shana puts the Spirit away.]

Dart: "Can you get up?"

Shana: "See. I'm fine now!"

Dart: "Doctor.... About this, I don't know what to say."

Sanator: "I wouldn't understand even if you told me. It's enough just seeing a miracle with my own eyes! It was worth waiting this long! In addition, I don't need any reward. Just end the war quickly. That'll do."

Dart: "There is no more threat of the Dragon. The rest will be taken care of by King Albert soon."

Sanator: "I see.... Hmm, you defeated that Dragon. Hmmm, you may win your way through to a pretty good level. Wait, not only that. You might be able to win the title of the strongest in the world!"

Dart: "The strongest in the world?"

Sanator: "Are you interested, huh? Well, you are just in time for the Hero Competition. Daredevils are coming from all over the world to compete with their brawn and brains. If you are interested, go to the Arena. I am looking forward to seeing the match."

[Dart heads to the Arena and finds a sign-up booth.]

Ginger: "Hey, if any of you people out there are live fast die young types, and want to test your courage, step up and fill out the application! My advice to those of you who are feeble, cowards, or have cold feet, don't register. I guarantee you will die. So you'll register now?"

Dart: R1 --> Not yet.

R2 --> I'll participate.

R1: "Not yet."

Ginger: "Come back if you change your mind!"

[R2:]

Dart: "I'll participate."

Ginger: "That's my man! And, who will be participating?"

Dart: "Of course I am. Hey Lavitz. Don't go easy on me."

Lavitz: "I'm not participating. I am a Knight of Basil. I am not eligible to participate in these kinds of competitions."

Rose: "I won't either. I don't like the word, 'dude.' Besides, it'll spoil the competition if I participate. I'm too good."

Shana: "Good luck!"

Lavitz: "We will be watching from up there."

[Shana and Rose leave.]

Lavitz: "Don't embarrass yourself in front of Shana. (Just don't turn yourself into a Dragoon. It'll create a big mess.)"

Ginger: "When you are ready, go to the waiting room! We'll be waiting for you!"

[Dart heads to the waiting room.]

Wandering Warrior: "What!! Old Geezer!! Say that again!!"

????: "Martial abilities mature along with the spirit. You have such an immature spirit. You are not a match for me."

Wandering Warrior: "Urrggghh!! I can't stand it anymore!! I'll settle up with you here!!"

[The 'old geezer' punches his lights out.]

????: "I told you so. You have to respect old people."

Dart: "Haschel!!"

Haschel: "Oh!? Oh!! It's you Dart!!"

Dart: "You'll never change."

Haschel: "Well, I taught him some courtesy. That's all. Hmm, you...have become tougher since the last time I saw you."

Dart: "You too, Haschel, you look even stronger."

Haschel: "Ha ha ha! Even if you flatter me, I won't go easy on you!"

Dart: "I know. I missed you, man. Talking to you reminds me of our journey together."

Haschel: "That reminds me.... What happened to...that black whachamacallit?"

Ginger: "Hey Hey Hey Hey Hey Hey! Gents! The time has come to decide the strongest in Endiness! Enter the arena when you are ready!!"

Haschel: "Don't lose before our match! This is it. Here I come!"

[Haschel enters his first match.]

Attendant: "It's the first round. Are you ready?"

R1 --> Hold on a little.

R2 --> Yeah.

R1 (Dart): "Hold on a little."

R2 (Dart): "Yeah!"

Attendant: "Are you tensed up? It's natural when this is your first time. Take it easy!"

[Dart goes into the arena, fighting Gorgaga, whom he beats easily.]

Gorgaga: "Darn! You just wait!!"

Attendant: "It was a great victory over Gorgaga. Are you ready for the second round?"

R1 --> Hold on a little.

R2 --> Yeah!

R1 (Dart): "Hold on a little."

R2 (Dart): "Yeah!"

Attendant: "You are relaxed a little. But still stiff. A deep breath....maybe isn't necessary. Here you go!"

[The fight against Serfius starts and ends quickly.]

Serfius: "Agh! Too powerful...."

Attendant: "Your chances are very good, because you defeated the famous Serfius! Are you ready for the third round!?"

R1 --> Hold on a little.

R2 --> Yeah!

R1 (Dart): "Hold on a little."

R2 (Dart): "Yeah!"

Attendant: "You've warmed up haven't you! Give it your best shot for your friends upstairs! Come on, let's begin!"

[Dart defeats Danton.]

Danton: "It cannot be."

[Dart goes back to the waiting room.]

Attendant: "Next is the semifinals! Your match is with last year's champion, Atlow! Even though he lost, he is pretty strong!"

R1 --> Hold on a little.

R2 --> Yeah!

R1 (Dart): "Hold on a little."

R2 (Dart): "Yeah!"

Attendant: "The only thing I can say now is it's a game of  
chance! Good luck!"

[Dart defeats Atlow.]

Atlow: "What a monster! Nobody should be able to get up after that!"

[Dart heads back to the waiting room.]

Dart: "Hey Haschel! At last we can meet in the final match!"

Haschel: "Well...the world is still to be explored. Ha Ha Ha."

Dart: "No, did you lose?"

Haschel: "He was a tremendous sword master. I think...his name was Lloyd or  
something. Think of him as a test for yourself, and just do it."

[Lloyd enters.]

Haschel: "Speak of the devil."

Dart: "My name is Dart. We will meet in the final match. Let's have a good  
one."

Lloyd: "Indeed. I dedicate this match to what fate has in store for us."

Dart: "What?"

Ginger: "Here is the gong to determine the strongest! No time for holding back  
anymore! The crowd is on the edge of their seats!"

Haschel: "It comes from the heart, after all."

Attendant: "I now am one of your fans. Your way of fighting, sword use,  
defense, talking, everything is fabulous. Now the finals are next!!  
Come on!!"

R1 --> Hold on a little.

R2 --> Yeah!

R1 (Dart): "Hold on a little."

R2 (Dart): "Yeah!"

Attendant: "I knew it would happen. I'm not going to stop you!  
For your friends, claim the title and come back  
here!!"

[Dart squares off against Lloyd.]

Dart: "What swordsmanship! It's humanly impossible!!"

[Lloyd raises his sword again.]

Lloyd: "It's pathetic, and out of the question."

[After a bit of swordplay:]

Lloyd: "It's about time."

[He and Dart rush each other, but Lloyd slashes through him and wins.]

Ginger: "Here are the results of the annual Endiness Hero Competition!! The victor, is the Platinum-haired swordsman, Lloyd!!! The toughest and strongest man in all of Endiness!!! Second is Dart the 'Young Flame'!! Third place goes to Haschel, the 'Master of the Rouge Art'!!

[In the waiting room, Dart and Haschel talk. Lloyd is there, too.]

Dart: "I was totally defeated."

Lloyd: "You haven't reached your limits. You will be stronger. You will have to be. You too. You'll become stronger."

Haschel: "You flatter me."

[Lavitz runs in.]

Lavitz: "Come out quickly. Everybody is waiting for you, Dart. In particular, Shana! I watched your match with Dart. I would love to have a match with you if this were a time of peace."

Lloyd: "Sorry, but you are no match for me."

Lavitz: "It's hard to take, but it must be true. Someday, if we meet, please accept my challenge. I'll be stronger too."

Lloyd: "I'll think about it."

[Lloyd leaves.]

Dart: "It's not only you, Lavitz, who needs more discipline. I couldn't keep up with him either."

Haschel: "Me neither. Ha ha ha."

Lavitz: "You must be Master Haschel of the Rouge School."

Dart: "I didn't introduce you to everybody, yet. Why don't we go outside? I want you to meet my friends."

Haschel: "Interesting! The lone wolf Dart has 'friends'! Let me see your friends!"

[They meet by the exit.]

Shana: "Dart!! Congratulations on second place!"

Dart: "Thanks. I wish I could have won first prize for you."

Shana: "It's okay, Dart. You looked very cool! Besides, just having you safe is enough for me. Oh, this person?"

Haschel: "You only watched Dart, did you? Oh well. Ha ha ha. Don't worry. It's universal. Girls in love are blind!"

Dart: "It's not that. You haven't changed, Haschel. He's never serious except when he is fighting."

Haschel: "Well it's not.... It's true. But the goal of my journey is a serious one. I am looking for my daughter who ran away."

Dart: "It was around four years ago. We met when I was on my quest pursuing the Black Monster."

Rose: [Black...Monster.]

Haschel: "The tootsie over there is your friend too?"

Rose: "Don't 'tootsie' me. My name is Rose."

Haschel: "Well, which one is Dart's sweetheart?"

Dart: "Wha, What are you talking about! Besides, I told you about Shana many times!"

Haschel: "Did you? So, you still think of her as your baby sister?"

Dart: "Stop that."

[Lavitz whispers to Dart.]

Lavitz: "Hey Dart. Here is the plan. Why don't you go around the arena just with Shana. Then, I can go out wiht Rose."

[He goes over to Rose and tells him the plan.]

Rose: "What?"

[She knocks him over.]

Rose: (Why do I have to go with you?)

Lavitz: (Just pretending. Really.)

Shana: "Dart.... It's a good chance. Can we do it?"

Haschel: "Shall we go?"

[Haschel and Shana start to walk away side-by-side.]

Lavitz: "I didn't mean you, Master Haschel!"

Haschel: "Oh yeah? It seems Dart cannot make up his mind so I thought I could do it for him." [Obtain: 3 tickets]

Dart: "I guess. We haven't had any time to relax. Shall we!?"

[Dart and Shana play a game.]

Shana: "I feel dizzy."

Dart: "It's my kind of game. It's like a battle."

Shana: "..."

Dart: "What do you want to do next?"



Shana: "Umm.... Anything you want, Dart. I am just happy to be alone with you. Besides, it's been a while since I've been in this kind of place."

Dart: "Let's go look for another place, then!"

[Dart goes over to Lavitz later.]

Lavitz: "Are you okay with that?"

R1 --> Not yet.

R2 --> I got enough.

R1: "Not yet."

Lavitz: "All ready. So go. I'll be waiting here."

R2: "I got enough."

Lavitz: "Had some fun?"

Shana: "Yes. Thank you, Lavitz."

Dart: "Now, we gotta get back to Bale otherwise, we'll be late with our report to King Albert."

Lavitz: "Dart, come this way."

[Lavitz and Dart talk outside.]

Lavitz: "Did you do something about it?"

Dart: "I didn't do anything."

Lavitz: "'Anything?' You didn't even take her hand?"

Dart: "Shana is not a baby anymore. I don't need to go hand in hand."

Lavitz: "Dart, are you getting what I am talking about?"

Dart: "I guess. But Shana is like a baby sister to me. I cannot change that."

Lavitz: "I don't think Shana thinks that way."

Dart: "When the war ends, I gotta go on my journey again. Pursuing the Black Monster...and I don't want her to be involved in that."

Lavitz: "Dart. Revenge doesn't solve anything. I learned that from the death of Greham, the guy who betrayed my father, the guy who defected to the Sandora.... The guy I hated. The person you should be looking for is not in your past. Right? You should pay attention to the present. I'll accept a couple of drinks for this advice. When the war ends, let's have a drink in Bale."

[Lavitz walks back into the arena.]

Dart: "He, Hey, Wait!! Lavitz...."

[As the party turns to leave, a wounded Knight of Basil enters town.]

Woman: "Yeek!!"

Knight of Basil: "Urgh!!"

[The knight falls over.]

Lavitz: "You, you are a Knight of Basil!! What has happened?"

Knight of Basil: "Sir...Lavitz? I'm...glad... At least I won't die in vain...."

Lavitz: "What's going on!?"

Knight of Basil: "Sandoras...surprised us with an attack... His Majesty  
Albert...is in captivity...."

Lavitz: "What!?"

Knight of Basil: "The King...Hellena..."

[The knight dies.]

Lavitz: "King Albert!! I am coming now!!"

Dart: "Calm down Lavitz!! Pull yourself together!!"

Lavitz: "Let me go!!! I gotta go! King Albert!!!"

[Haschel gut-punches him to calm him down.]

Lavitz: "Ou...!!"

Haschel: "Sorry about that."

[Lavitz regains consciousness at Sanator's.]

Lavitz: "I am.... King Albert!!"

Haschel: "You idiot!! When knights lose self-control, their lord cannot be  
saved. Only you can save King Albert now."

Lavitz: "!?"

Haschel: "While you were sleeping, I want to get a feel for the situation.  
Bale is under occupation. So, I don't think the remaining knights can  
do anything."

Lavitz: "What about King Albert!?"

Haschel: "He offered himself up as a captive so that the people in Basil could  
be safe."

Lavitz: "Just because I defeated a dragon...!! Why was I all whooped up!!"

Haschel: "There is no time for procrastination."

Lavitz: "!?"

Dart: "There is no choice. We must venture forth to Hellena!"

Haschel: "We are taking the king back, aren't we?"

Shana: "We still have time!"

Rose: "If you are going to go, make up your mind quickly."

Lavitz: "Yeah!! That's right!! We are still here!! But how about you, Master Haschel?"

Haschel: "I've gone too far, I might as well just go too."

Lavitz: "What about your daughter!?"

Haschel: "Don't mind me. I have already been looking for her for 20 years. Going with you for a little while won't make any difference."

Lavitz: "Master Haschel, I cannot thank you enough."

Haschel: "Don't worry about it. But can you call me just Haschel? Master Haschel makes me feel uneasy...that includes you too, Shana."

Shana: "Okay, Haschel!"

Haschel: "It feels good to be called by my first name by a young girl."

Lavitz: "Now! As soon as we are ready, let's head for Hellena!!"

[They leave.]

Sanator: "I'll have lots of things to do."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 17 - Hellena Prison | HLL2 |  
o-----o

[The infiltration begins anew.]

Dart: "The bridge is being raised!!"

[Only Lavitz gets across the drawbridge while it's down.]

Dart: "Lavitz!!"

Lavitz: "It's nothing!!"

[Sword clashing is heard, and the drawbridge lowers.]

Lavitz: "Go!!"

[Elsewhere in the massive prison, Fruegel talks with a captive Albert.]

Fruegel: "Hee hee hee hee! It will be dawn soon! I am such a nice guy aren't I? Letting you see the sun before you die! Say something!!"

Hellena Warden: "Bu, but the order says leave him alive."

Fruegel: "Shut up!! When the sun rises!! This guy will be...mine from that moment!! Say something, huh!? King!!"

Albert: "I don't have a means to speak with vulgar men."

Fruegel: "And you will be killed by that 'vulgar' man!! Well at least you are not alone. Those guys from Bale, will come after you soon!!"

Albert: "How...how villainous! What about the promise not to hurt people!? I didn't know Doel had become so ruthless!!"

Fruegel: "We just want your 'body'! I don't know the rest!! Hee hee hee hee!!"

Hellena Warden (2): "Intruders are here!! They are coming this way headed by Lavitz and a man in red armor!!"

Albert: "Lavitz!!"

Fruegel: "The head of the knights and the red one!!! That's interesting. They might be the saving stars for you, but you won't have a chance to see them. Both the stars and you will be gone when the sun rises!! Hee hee hee hee!!!!"

[Eventually, the team makes it to the top and finds a warden ambush.]

Dart: "!!"

Hellena Warden: "Thank you for coming all the way here!!"

Lavitz: "An ambush, huh? Take us to King Albert!! Or it'll be your last breath!!"

Hellena Warden: "Hmm. Brave, brave. You still don't know who you are and where you are."

Dart: "I don't want to have a needless battle! Shut up and get out of our way!"

Hellena Warden: "We know how strong you are. But it doesn't make any difference because you are still just feed!!"

[A trapdoor sends everyone plummeting into a lower area.]

Dart: "Shoot!!"

[Everyone regroups in the large cell.]

Dart: "Everybody alright!?"

Shana: "I'm fine."

Lavitz: "This is not even a problem."

Haschel: "Sandora is such a coward. Making a trap like that without fighting..."

Rose: "Well, it is one way to fight. It's our own fault for being trapped."

Haschel: "You are harsh."

[Dart inspects the wall Shana is looking at.]

Dart: "It's true. The draft is coming from here!"

Lavitz: "Then, if we move the rock there should be a way out!!"

Haschel: "It seems we have to welcome unwanted guests before that."

Rose: "Well, we are supposed to be feed. We have everything we need."

Dart: "Coming!!"

[The party defeats Jiango and the rock wall reveals the exit.]

Lavitz: "We made it!"

Dart: "There is no enemy in front of us!"

Lavitz: "Yeah!!"

Haschel: "Look at that! The monster fell and the rock collapsed!"

Lavitz: "Let's go!!"

[Lavitz, Dart, and Rose run off.]

Haschel: "Shana, is something wrong?"

Shana: "Men can have a great friendship."

Haschel: "It's about Dart and Lavitz, isn't it."

Shana: "They understand each other without a word. Man and woman cannot be like that. I envy them a little bit."

Haschel: "What about with Dart?"

Shana: "I...still don't know yet. He seems to have been thinking about me as his 'sister'."

Dart: "Shana! Is anything wrong!?"

Shana: "No! Nothing! I'm coming!"

[After cutting down some wardens, the party makes their way towards Albert, who's seeing dawn rise.]

Fruegel: "The sun is rising. It's good for you! You die and the war ends! That was your wish wasn't it? You want to end the war don't you? I'll make your dream come true very soon. Hee hee hee hee!!"

Albert: "Agh, I am vexed!!"

Fruegel: "It's unfortunate for Lord Doel, but I cannot wait for the one with the silver hair!! I just want to kill you so badly!! When I see the smallest glimpse of the sun, I'll cut your head off for ya!!"

[An arrow strikes Freugel.]

Fruegel: "UURRGHH!!"

Lavitz: "King Albert!!! I won't forgive you!!!"

Fruegel: "Tut. Those rats came on time. It doesn't matter. I'll get you all before Albert!!"

[The party defeats the evil head warden. Albert cries out in pain as a man

dressed in black pulls something out of his body.]

Albert: "Argggghhhh!"

??????: "I knew it was here. Moon Gem."

Dart: "Moon Gem!?"

[Lavitz, infuriated, lunges in Dragoon form towards the man.]

Lavitz: "Ahhhhhhh!!!"

[The man brings out a strange sword and stabs Lavitz easily.]

Dart: "Laviiiiitz!!!"

Rose: "The sword!"

[The strange man is revealed to be...]

Dart: "Lloyd!!!"

[Lloyd jumps out a window and escapes.]

Dart: "Laviiiiitz!! Lavitz, Hang on!! Hey!"

Lavitz: "Is His Majesty Albert alright?"

Dart: "Yes, yes."

Lavitz: "I see. I can entrust you with everything."

Dart: "Lavitz...."

Lavitz: "Dart, survive...and..."

[Lavitz dies.]

Dart: "Lavitz...?"

Albert: "Lavitz, thank you."

[The Jade Dragoon Spirit leaves Lavitz and goes to Albert.]

Dart: "Laaaaaaviiiiiiiiiiiitz!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 18 - Seles SLS2 |  
o-----o

[After the events at Hellena, everyone regroups in Seles.]

Albert: "I still have someplace for shelter...."

Dart: "We can hide underneath here."

Albert: "I'll help."

Dart: "I cannot let you!"

Albert: "Let me do it. When I am moving like this, I don't feel pain."

[They clear some rubble and enter a cellar.]

Albert: "I owe you and Lavitz a debt of gratitude."

Dart: "Lavitz is no more...."

Shana: "But, we are still alive. Being alive means we can do anything we want, right? I think it is enough for now. ... I think Lavitz would agree with me."

Albert: \*Grin\* "It reminds me of what Lavitz happily told me about you. That he had met 'guys he could finally call friends.' Now, I understand why. Dart, Shana, Haschel, and Rose, Lavitz was my most loyal and strongest knight, and at the same time, he was my precious friend. Yes, he was a great 'guy'. I would like to show you my gratitude. Thank you."

Rose: "He was out of luck. I didn't know he had the Dragon Buster. If I had known it, I would have stopped Lavitz."

Dart: "Dragon Buster? What are you talking about?"

Rose: "It's a weapon from the old world made only to kill Dragons. Even with the almighty Dragoon Armor, it is a mere shroud in front of the Dragon Buster."

Dart: "Lloyd.... What kind of plot is he weaving?"

[After awhile, Albert decides to share some information.]

Albert: "I guess I have to talk about it with you. The truth about what Lloyd took from me.... Everything about it.... The story goes back 11,000 years... Winglies who ruled the earth were defeated in the Dragon Campaign and disappeared. However, their sacred objects were scattered around the world. They contained their magic power concealed in them which only they could use. One of them was handed down in Serdio, and it has been sealed inside the body of each crown heir, because of the fear that the power could bring evil. The sacred object is the secret treasure of Serdio which has been taken. The Moon Gem."

Rose: "Where did Lloyd find out about it?"

Albert: "I was foolish. I bought his intelligence and employed him as an advisor. Probably, he was employed by Imperial Sandora."

Rose: "That's right. Once he obtains the secret treasure, he is the crown heir of Serdio both in name and reality. The birth of the Conqueror King Doel. That would be the end of Basil."

Dart: "His Majesty King Albert is still alive here. The war is not over yet! Basil is not finished!"

Rose: "What is a king to do if he doesn't have a castle to go back to and a large force to protect him?"

Albert: "Indeed, I am helplessly alone. However, as the Dragoons of yore lead Humans to victory.... We still have a chance to overcome. We have only one target. Emperor Doel in the Black Castle."

Rose: "You have such a daring strategy. But it's not bad."

Shana: "Let's do it!"

Dart: "We can do this together!"

Haschel: "My iron fist might be able to help you."

Albert: "I will show them the full force of my lance, which I learned how to use from Lavitz!"

Dart: "Lavitz! We won't let your death be in vain!"

[Meanwhile, in the Black Castle at Kazas...]

Emperor Doel: "It seems Hellena fell."

Lloyd: "Don't be so anxious. I got what I need."

Emperor Doel: "Leaving the girl at large is one of your schemes, huh?"

Lloyd: "It's none of your business."

Emperor Doel: "Doesn't matter. I will soon hold sway over all Serdio. And, your plan will be completed."

Lloyd: "No. It's just the beginning. At least be careful not to get carried away. Don't be burned in a red fire."

Emperor Doel: "Nobody can stop me. I will not, even if I sell my soul to the devil."

o-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 19 - Black Castle at Kazas KZS1 |  
o-----o

[As the Dragoons approach the front gate...]

Dart: "!"

[...some guards walk by.]

Dart: "I don't think breaking through from the front gate will work."

Albert: "Let's do some more research. We may find a good way to sneak in."

[This time, they find a slum nearby.]

?: "Welcome to the ruins of the underground fortress. You guys look like new faces. You want to join the New Serdio Party, don't you? I want to let you in, but I need to ask three questions. I have to check you out. First question. Which country do you want to win, Basil or Sandora?"

R1 -> Kingdom of Basil

R2 -> Imperial Sandora

R3 -> I can't say which.

R1: "That's the Kingdom of Basil."

?: "Sorry, but I cannot let you in."



R2: "Imperial Sandora?"

?: "Sorry, but I cannot let you in."

R3: "I can't say which. The important thing is to end the war as soon as possible, not winning or losing."

?: "I think so too. Always hate or spite remains after the fight, regardless of whether you win or not."

?: "The second question. During the war, which should powerless kids like us do?"

R1 -> Do nothing

R2 -> Take up weapons

R3 -> Take care at home

R1: "I think they should do nothing. We cannot let kids fight."

?: "I agree with your first answer, but sorry. Think over and come back."

R2: "Although as a last resort.... In extreme cases the kids should fight too."

?: "I agree with your first answer, but sorry. Think over and come back."

R3: "We cannot send kids to battle. But somebody has to take care so that the people fighting have someplace to come back to."

?: "I agree. There are some things we can do too."

?: "The last question. Why do people have to fight?"

R1 -> To obtain something

R2 -> To protect something

R3 -> To destroy something

R1: "War is to win something.... So, it is to obtain something...?"

?: "Sorry come back again. If you can answer the last question right, I may be able to help you."

R2: "If 'War' is to obtain or destroy something, I'll throw my sword away. I only fight to protect something."

?: "I think so too!! People should only fight to protect something! I learned that from my grandpa."

R3: "'War'...hmm. Maybe people are fighting to destroy something after all."

?: "Sorry come back again. If you can answer the last question right, I may be able to help you."

Dart: "You had a good grandpa, but you are...?"

Popo: "I am Popo. I am a representative of the New Serdio Party. I am campaigning to help people who are having hard times because of the war."

Albert: "It is amazing. I heard about the party, but I didn't think the representative would be this young."

Popo: "Oh.... You.... Did we meet somewhere?"

Albert: "We've never met before, but you might know my face. I am Albert, the King of Basil."

Popo: "Oh my god!!! You, you, you are!!! King Albert!!??"

[Popo takes everyone inside to talk.]

Popo: "I've been waiting for this day to come!! The day King Albert liberates Kazas and sets us free!!"

Dart: "That's what we are here for. We will end the war now."

Popo: "But, I don't think these few people can break through the defenses of the Black Castle."

Albert: "Don't worry. We can do it. We can't tell you how though. They say that the power once was the card that liberated Humans from Winglies. Now, it is the ace to open up our own fate."

Popo: "Ah, it's like a dream!! Now I can go look for my father and mother when the war ends."

Rose: "Don't waste time babysitting like that. Why don't you think about how to get into the castle?"

Popo: "I...I am just a kid, but I can show you the way in the castle!!"

Dart: "Can you!?"

Popo: "Yes! This place used to be a fortress, so there is a secret path to get to the Black Castle!"

Dart: "Secret path? Now we are closer to Doel!"

Popo: "Come with me now!!"

Albert: "Please wait. If we fail, it'll be too risky for you. We will come back after we prepare."

Popo: "I got it! I'll be waiting at the secret path! Please hurry up!!"

[They follow him.]

Popo: "Are you ready to go into the Black Castle?"

R1 -> Not yet.

R2 -> Yeah. I'm ready.

R1: "Not yet."

Popo: "I see... But I think it has to be today. It's unusual, the castle is quiet. I wonder if they found out that King Albert is in Kazas? Hurry, or my secret path will be discovered!"

R2: "Yeah. We are ready. The only thing left is to make it to the Black

Castle."

Popo: "I almost gave up when I heard Bale was taken, I thought all my campaigning was in vain. But I found out you are alive, Your Majesty, and we can still fight. I now see the future! Good luck!!"

Dart: "Yes. I will defeat Doel, and end the war."

Shana: "To prevent a repetition of the sorrow of you and Seles."

Haschel: "I guess I'll be serious for the first time in a while!"

Albert: "For the people who desire peace, I'll fight."

Rose: "I'm going ahead."

Dart: "Ro, Rose!!"

[Everyone follows her down the rope, which leads to the castle proper.]

-----o  
| Ch. 1 - 20 - Black Castle at Kazas II KZS2 |  
-----o

[A ways into the castle, the party stumbles upon a weird pillar of light.]

Dart: "What is this?"

Green Flame Researcher: "You are...? Are you here to see my research?"

White Flame Researcher: "Or.... To visit me?"

Green Flame Researcher: "Either way, we are pleased. We like it when mercenaries like you have an interest in our research."

White Flame Researcher: "Indeed. Recently, barbaric suicidal attacks have become common, but if our research is successful, it will reduce the casualties of war. For example, that White Flame has a healing power."

Green Flame Researcher: "And that Green Flame isn't extinguished by water. When we put it to practical use, it will provide an advantage in war."

Albert: "But...I've never seen such technologies. It's like...like magic."

White Flame Researcher: "You don't need to know about that. There are already enough of us involved in this accursed research."

Green Flame Researcher: "Yes. Your job is to fight. There are too many things we don't know about this power. If you get involved, you might end up like Mr. Magi."

White Flame Researcher: "It's too late for that guy. We have to complete this research before it is too late for Sandora."

Albert: "I see. I will end the war. But.... Can we ask you a little more? For example, what kind of function does this Purple Flame serve?"

White Flame Researcher: "This flame is the power source of the castle. The

Purple Flame drives the elevators and lifts. It helps people's lives. That's the proper way of usage."

Albert: "But the war decides the usage now."

Green Flame Researcher: "Yes. Even if this technology could be used for the happiness of the people, once it is used wrongly, it may bring unhappiness. What we are making may bring unhappiness to the people in Basil."

White Flame Researcher: "I agree. This research is after all based on the calamity caused by the Dragon. War creates catastrophe."

Green Flame Researcher: "It's a sad thing for both the people and the Dragon."

Dart: "The Dragon!? The Dragon is involved in this research?"

White Flame Researcher: "Oh, I slipped my tongue. Forget what I said."

Green Flame Researcher: "Now, back to the research. Let me give you some Magic Oil. This is the fuel for the Purple Flame. It gives you mobility." [Acquired Magic Oil]

White Flame Researcher: "If you want to be healed, come visit me anytime."

Albert: "Thank you very much. It was very...useful."

[Using the Magic Oil, the party finds Mr. Magi's workroom.]

???????: "You...who are you!? I know. You are thieves who've come to steal my magic!!"

Dart: "Wait! We are...."

???????: "No excuse!!"

Dart: "Watch out! We don't know what he'll do!"

Rose: "Let him. It seems interesting."

???????: "Take this!! The steel shearing vacuum blade!! Why! Why doesn't the magic work!? Why doesn't it shear them!"

Rose: "It's worse than I thought."

???????: "That was...still under research! I'll show you this! Take the rock crushing thunder arrow!!"

Haschel: "I see...you are the researcher who is 'too late' aren't you?"

Shana: "Then.... Mr. Magi is...?"

Magi the Magic Researcher: "Humph!! Those dumb researchers of trashy stuff said something to you, didn't they!?"

Rose: "Leave us alone."

Albert: "We are not here to criticize your research."

Magi the Magic Researcher: "Shut up!! I have already made the discovery! The

secret of a magic that those losers could never even hope to know! The magic of transformation can only be known by someone like mystel, who completely understands the magical power of Dragons!! I'll show it to you now!! Cerberus!! Emerge!!"

Dart: "It seems real this time!"

[Magi changes into a fearsome, four-legged...puppy dog.]

Shana: "I wonder? Is this dog, Mr. Magi?"

Albert: "I guess it requires more research to be controlled by Humans."

Rose: "But, at least in the end he amused us."

[Infiltrating further, everyone stumbles upon training guards.]

Dart: "!!"

Knight of Sandora 1: "Invaders!?"

Knight of Sandora 2: "You had such good luck sneaking into the practice center, didn't you!!"

Knight of Sandora 3: "Catch'em!!"

[The first enemy is demolished.]

Knight of Sandora 1: "The, these guys are unbelievable!!"

Knight of Sandora 2: "Don't think!! We are Knights of Sandora, so just defeat'em!!"

[KOS #2 is defeated.]

Knight of Sandora 3: "Ag!! Am I the last one!? But I won't give up!!"

[All are deep-sixed soon enough.]

Dart: "Well we took care of that."

[One room contains Sandora's general.]

Great Commander of Sandora: "You are here. The girl from Seles..."

Dart: "You said "The girl from Seles"?"

Shana: "You, you took me away to Hellena."

Great Commander of Sandora: "Indeed. I am the one who assaulted Seles under the orders of Emperor Doel."

Dart: "So, you killed everybody!!"

Great Commander of Sandora: "That was done by the brutal unit loyal to Fruegel. I wouldn't let them kill unnecessarily if I were there... Anyway, it doesn't change the fact that Imperial Sandora scorched Seles. If you want revenge for your home, you can draw your sword

against me. But please do me one last favor. His Majesty Doel changed after a man called Lloyd showed up. He must have instilled something into Emperor Doel, a demonic word that ignites his desire to vanquish.... You were able to make it here, so you might be able to do it. I beg you! Wake Emperor Doel up!"

Dart: "Do you understand what will result?"

Great Commander of Sandora: "Yes. If you can accomplish that, the Imperial Sandora's dominance will end and we even might be defeated by Basil.... But the result will be the same if the current oppression of Emperor Doel continues. So we might as well make it happen faster and remove hardships on our people."

Dart: "There was a man like this in Sandora. Lavitz would be happy to hear this."

Great Commander of Sandora: "So...are you in!?"

Dart: "That's what we are here for."

Great Commander of Sandora: "I'm relieved to hear that. Now, take this with you." [Acquired Yellow Stone]

Dart: "What is this?"

Great Commander of Sandora: "It's the 'key' to the chamber of Emperor Doel. Hurry up. We have no time."

[Leaving the general, the party a large goddess statue with indentations.]

Shana: "Three holes. What are they? They might be something to do with the statue of the goddess."

Dart: "Why do you think so?"

Shana: "Because, look.... It seems this place is for admiring the statue."

Dart: "There must be something."

[Dart inputs the Red, Yellow, and Blue stones. A door in the statue opens. Up the stairway...]

Dart: "Stay back!"

Rose: "I smell blood in this air."

Haschel: "It's not human..."

Shana: "Kongol!!"

[An armored Kongol appears.]

Kongol: "Gigantos don't lose twice!! Gigantos make pay back for Hoax!! For His Majesty Doel!!"

[The party still beats Kongol, and Rose skewers his weird armor off.]

Kongol: "ARRRGH! Gigantos, with strongest armor...lost. Me, brother of hero...has pride. Cannot live in disgrace.... Kill me."

Rose: "As you wish."

Dart: "Stop it! The game is already over!"

Rose: "'Game'? Don't be silly, this is a matter of life or death."

Shana: "It's over. He cannot fight."

Rose: "Hope your sweetness won't kill you."

[Everyone finally reaches Emperor Doel's chamber.]

Emperor Doel: "I wonder how you could come all the way here. Silly daredevils."

Dart: "You must be Doel!!"

Albert: "Uncle.... Do you remember me!? I am the son of your late brother.... Albert!"

Emperor Doel: "You remind me of...Carlo, 20 years ago. A bloodstained corpse in front of me...."

Albert: "Why did you kill him!? Why did you have to divide Serdio by killing my father!?"

Emperor Doel: "To save Serdio from an incapable leader named Carlo. And now my hands are about to give birth to the new Serdio!"

Dart: "'Birth'!? What you are doing is only destructive!!"

Albert: "Yes! You have given birth to sorrow, pain, agony, and our anger!"

Dart: "Tell me!! Why did you have Shana taken away!?"

Emperor Doel: "Oh, you are talking about Lloyd's conspiracy. 'Finds the girl by the time the Moon That Never Sets waxes....' All is ordered by the reborn Emperor Diaz. Lloyd is a mere pawn. Along with the Dragoons...."

Rose: "Silly. Emperor Diaz died in the Dragon Campaign. As a human...hero."

Emperor Doel: "I don't care whether you believe it or not. It won't make any difference to the reality! You thought, you would defeat me with greater numbers, right!? Come!! I'll send you to your father's placed!!"

Albert: "Uncle!!"

Dart: "Doel!!"

[The party defeats Doel.]

Emperor Doel: "You have become...strong."

Albert: "Uncle."

Emperor Doel: "What you should know is not the past, but the future. Pursue..."

Lloyd. He is in the Western country of...Tiberoa."

Dart: "Tiberoa?"

Emperor Doel: "He....He knows everything. Go, and find out...about the world, about...everything."

[Emperor Doel dies.]

Albert: "My uncle's, err, Emperor Doel's ambitions are over. It places an end to this ceaseless long war that has divided Serdio into two. This is the end of our journey everyone...."

Dart: "Not yet.... It's not over yet.... This journey began when Shana was taken away! Then Lavitz was killed, and Lloyd headed for Tiberoa leaving the mystery about Shana behind! I am pursuing Lloyd! I'll make him explain everything!"

Shana: "I'll go with you.... I still don't know anything about Virage or what was said by Emperor Diaz. My journey cannot end like this.... I'll go with you, Dart!"

Albert: "My journey 'cannot end' either.... Whatever conspiracy the man is forming, the Moon Gem is one of the keys. Hollowed object concealing the magic power of the ancient Winglies. We have to stop it before it ignites a catastrophe in Tiberoa. I'll go with you to Tiberoa. I'll give up my status as king for a while, and live as a Dragoon instead. Lavitz would have completely agreed."

Haschel: "Rose, how about you?"

Rose: "I told you. I'm interested in you guys."

Dart: "So...."

Rose: "Besides, you feel naked without me, don't you?"

Haschel: "If Rose is going.... That's the end of my role."

Dart: "Haschel, where are you going?"

Haschel: "This is?"

[Haschel receives the

Rose: "'When Dragoons meet, blood will flow and as they leave, time does slow.' It's your choice to leave your fate behind."

Haschel: "The question is answered."

Dart: "Dragoon Spirits are leading us!"

[END OF DISC 1]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 21 - Twin Castle at Fletz TCF1 |  
o-----o

[Having journeyed to Tiberoa, everyone enters a city resplendent in design.]



Shana: "I smell...the ocean from this river!"

Haschel: "It's close to the sea. Is anything wrong with the bridge?"

Dart: "It says 'Claire Bridge'. It's the same name as my mom."

Haschel: "Oh! My runaway daughter is named Claire, too! There may be some secret connection between us!"

Rose: "It's impossible to have such a coincidence."

Albert: "I agree with you. Let's say the population of the Endiness Continent is about 1,000,000 and 550,000 are women. According to the statistics of the Royal Personnel Authority, 4% of all women have the name Claire. It means from a statistical point of view...."

Rose: "Just looking tells it all. They don't look like each other at all."

Albert: "Hmmm, indeed. Cranioscopically speaking, the distance between their skull, eyeballs, and also their jawbones are...."

Rose: "Let's go. He won't finish talking until dusk."

[In the center of town...]

????: "Yeek!!"

Dart: "!?"

[Down the way a bit, by the castle gates...]

Man : "Shoot, Pri, Princess Emille is here!!"

All : "It's too sudden!! It's scary! Gods, please help us through this...."

[The princess appears.]

Emille: "I heard somebody say 'Shoot'. Who was that!? Hey, I'm the princess in this country. You have to be nice to me!"

Pregnant Mother: "Ex, Excuse me your highness, I would like you to name my soon-to-be-born baby...."

Emille: "I don't think so. It's a hell on wheels."

Pregnant Mother: "Oh no!"

Emille: "Disgusting!! Stop crying!!"

Pregnant Mother: "Since my husband was killed by bandits.... This, this baby has been my only hope."

Emille: "Bandits!? Phooey! You bore me!!"

[She leaves.]

Pregnant Mother: "Oh no!"

Albert: "Is, is that person Princess Emille? I heard she was very sweet. Oh no...if this is a dream, please wake me up!"

[After the spectacle, everyone goes to unwind in the town bar.]

Kaffi: "Welcome!! Come on in!! All the way to the back!! Oh, such slowpokes! You guys are from out of town, aren't ya!?"

R1 -> Yes, we are

R2 -> No, we are from here

R1: "Yes, we are."

Kaffi: "I knew it! I could immediately tell you are not from here. You guys.... Mmmm, mmmm! Smell like exotic foreigners! Let me give ya a quick introduction to this town!! You saw lots of star shapes in this town didn't ya? There were decorations on top of roofs or mosaics on the street, right? It's 'cuz Tiberians have faith in the stars. Naturally, we have an advanced astronomy."

Shana: "It's the study of stars isn't it? Sounds wonderful."

Kaffi: "Right!?"

Albert: ("We are here to pursue Lloyd!")

Kaffi: "Whadayasay? What are you two guys whispering about? Are you becoming more interested in stars?"

R3 -> Yes we are.

R4 -> I'm sorry, but....

R2: "No, we are from here."

Kaffi: "You, liar!! You don't look like you are from here!! Liar!!"

Barkeep: "Hey!! Kaffi!! Don't start up a fight with customers!!"

Kaffi: "Okay. Sorry. I gotta get back to work. (But why don't ya come back later. I have lots of things to tell ya. Besides, actually, we're not that busy.)"

R3: "Yes we are."

Kaffi: "Really! To tell ya the truth, I love to talk about stars with people from out of town while working at this here bar! Well, the stars are beyond the sky! They are way over the clouds! They are bright although they are far away. Cuz each of the stars has a lighthouse on it. Cuz they have a lighthouse, they never get lost in the sky! And, and!"

Barkeep: "Hey!! Kaffi!! Don't give the customers hard time!!"

Kaffi: "Okay. Sorry. I gotta get back to work. (But why don't ya come back later. I have lots of things to tell ya. Besides, actually, we're not that busy.)"

R4: "I'm sorry, but.... We are actually looking for a man named Lloyd."

Kaffi: "A 'man'? Are you more interested in a man than stars!? Just kidding! Hmm, Lloyd? I dunno, if Miss Kaffi the hipster doesn't know it means he probably isn't in this town. Are you still interested in hearing about stars?"

R5 -> Uh huh.

R6 -> I don't think so.

R5: "Uh huh."

Kaffi: "Sorry...I only know things that everybody else knows. You know what! I'll introduce you to a person you would like!! He's an astronomer named Fester! He is crazy about the Moon That Never Sets. I think he can tell you lots of interesting things."

Dart: "The Moon That Never Sets?"

Kaffi: "You know, the one over there. The strange star in the sky all the time, day or night. I heard he is doing research about the relationship between a monster called the Black whachamacallit and the Moon That Never Sets. Why don't you drop by? He's next door."

Barkeep: "Hey!! Kaffi!! Stop goofing around!! It's already dark outside!!"

Kaffi: "Okay. Sorry. I gotta get back to work."

R6: "I don't think so."

Kaffi: "I knew from the start that you actually didn't want to listen to me!! I know you actually don't like to talk!!"

Barkeep: "Hey!! Kaffi!! Don't get into it with the customers!!"

Kaffi: "Okay. Sorry. I gotta get back to work. (But why don't ya come back later. I have lots of things to tell ya. Besides, actually, we're not that busy.)"

[By doing the right order, it will be nighttime. They go to Fester's.]

Shana: "This must be the house next door. I wonder if Mr. Fester is in? Maybe not?"

Dart: "The lights are on though."

Shana: "Let me see! Mr. Festeerer!! Are you hooooome!?"

Fester: "Yes, yes I am!! Sorry! I wasn't paying attention. I was admiring the moon. Come on in! Please, let's talk inside."

[They all go in.]

Dart: "We are here to ask you about the Moon That Never Sets."

Fester: "Oh! About the Moon That Never Sets! Wait here for a minute. Let me get some materials. You are interested in a weird matter. Of course, I cannot make judgements about other people. Please take a look at this. In astronomy, a Moon That Never Sets cannot exist."

Dart: "Cannot exist?"

Fester: "That's right. Stars travel the sky by catching the winds of time. But, this moon is not affected by time. It never moves, day or night. That's

why it's called the Moon That Never Sets. After counting 108 years, when the Moon That Never Sets glows red, a moon child descends upon the earth to fill the world with holy bliss. A poem of war, telling the fate given by the Moon. However, what we really get is the spawning of destruction and fear, that is the Black Monster.

Dart: "Monster!!"

Fester: "Why a demon not a blessing? What does it mean? The mystery has yet to be resolved."

Albert: "I never imagined we would be able to get some information on the Black Monster here."

Fester: "Did you find this useful?"

Shana: "Yes! You think so too, right Dart?"

Fester: "Very good. It is a pleasure to be helpful to such a beautiful lady."

R1 -> (Ignore.)

R2 -> You said who is beautiful?

R1: (Ignore.)

R2: "You said who is beautiful?"

Shana: "Hey!"

Dart: "I guess there are many ways to see things."

Shana: "Whatever!"

Dart: "Stop it!"

Haschel: "Having a good friend is beautiful. It makes me envious."

[The town bell chimes.]

Fester: "Oh, it's getting late! I have to hurry up or I will be making the Princess wait! It's hard to eat only by astronomy. I'm acting as the governor of Princess Lisa as well. Oh, if you want to take a good look at the Moon That Never Sets, go upstairs and take a look through the telescope. It's set in the direction of the Moon That Never Sets. Now, I am heading to the castle."

[Fester leaves and everyone walks towards a newly-opened house.]

Nello: "Welcome. I am Nello, the representative of the Green Project, turning the brown barrens to green, the deserts to forest. Don't be so shy. You too wish to bring green back to the earth don't you?"

R1 -> Actually not.

R2 -> Yes, we do.

R1: "Actually not."

Nello: "Oh, I see. I won't force my opinion on you. But if you change your mind please drop by anytime."

R2: "Yes we do."

Nello: "I thought so! But it's already late. It'll take a whole night to explain my plan."

Dart: "A whole night, hmm!? But actually, it's okay with us isn't it? We were in trouble because there was nowhere to stay for the night. We are not allowed to leave town either."

Nello: "I see! I have plenty of time to tell you about the Green Project tonight then!"

Albert: "The re-vegetation of the desert is a very interesting issue."

Nello: "Right! In principle, the relationship between Humans and the earth should be!"

[Dart goes over to Shana.]

Dart: "Watching the buds?"

Shana: "Maybe...they are some kind of flower buds. I've never seen anything like this.... I wonder how they bloom."

Dart: "You are excited about it, aren't you? Talking about buds. You've always liked to see flowers blooming."

Shana: "You remember that...."

Nello: "Humans should grow up surrounded by greenery."

Albert: "Exactly. Green not only gives peace of mind but brings us marvelous things."

Nello: "Fruits, vegetables, delicious air. All are brought by greenery."

Rose: "I guess they really will talk until morning."

Haschel: "The king has such curiosity...."

Dart: "I hope we can fill Seles with green some day."

Shana: "Yes."

Albert: "The issue here is how to promote the greening."

Nello: "That's the key issue. The research requires a lot of money."

[Everyone stays the night, finally.]

Dart: "There are no signs of Lloyd after all."

Shana: "I cannot imagine that Emperor Doel told us a lie."

Albert: "In his last moment, my uncle was himself again. I think we can trust the information that Lloyd headed for Tiberoa. So we should assume that we crossed paths with Lloyd."

Dart: "So, where in the world?"

Rose: "In any case, the king is getting along with a motley crew like us."

Haschel: "I was concerned at first. I even imagined that we were going to be pushed around by the King's ego."

Albert: "Please, stop teasing me, both of you! What I would like you to do is just treat me as an equal, as a friend traveling together!"

Shana: "Dart is not good at speaking with courtesy. He gets cramps in his tongue when he tries for a long time."

Dart: "I appreciate your solicitude, Your Majesty."

Albert: "Let's stop using that 'Your Majesty'. We will be in trouble if anybody hears that. Anyway, the priority is to pursue Lloyd. This is not the only town in Tiboeria. If my memory is correct, there should be a town called Donau along the north sea shore."

Shana: "Let's go there now!"

Dart: "Okay! Let's leave as soon as possible!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 22 - The Barrens BRN1 |  
o-----o

[A little ways in, the party stumbles upon bandits.]

Dart: "!!"

Mappi: "Hee Hee Hee!! Are you dating those girls in a place like this!?"

Dart: "Who, are you?"

Mappi: "Hee hee hee! Did you hear that? They are asking us 'who we are!!'"

Gehrich Gang A: "I guess they think we're a bunch of doctors!!"

Gehrich Gang B: "Should be a quack!! Ha ha ha!!"

Mappi: "Surprise, surprise!! We are the one and only Gehrich Gang!! We're so bad we scare ghosts back to hell!!"

Dart: "They have no class."

Gehrich Gang A: "Hey what did you say?! Yo Mappi!! How should I cook these dumbheads!?"

Mappi: "Well, hmmm. I know what!! Let's get our reward of money and the bimbos!"

Albert: "We have nothing to give you. But if you insist, how about a 'miserable ending' for you?"

Mappi: "Stop yapping like that! Just leave your valuables. It's that simple!"

Dart: "Get out of our way. We don't have time to play with you."

Rose: "This is your last chance. Get out of our way or you'll need a real doctor."

Mappi: "Gwa...! ARRGGGH!!! I'm totally pissed!! Smash their heads will ya,

brother!?"

[The party smacks Mappi and his team around.]

Mappi: "H, hold. Wow. It's...It'smy fault. I won'd\t to it again. Please forgive me. Just kidding!"

[Mappi strikes at Dart and knocks his Dragoon Spirit loose. Mappi gets it.]

Mappi: "What's this?"

[Mappi leaves with the spirit, despite Rose's attempts.]

Albert: "He's gone."

Dart: "It's my fault for not being careful enough!"

Rose: "A Dragoon Spirit being stolen is the last thing I wanted to have happen."

Albert: "Anyway, let's move on to Donau. We might find out something about the Gehrich Gang when we get there."

[Everyone moves onto...]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 23 - Donau the Flower City DNF1 |  
o-----o

[Everyone enters the verdant city.]

Girl: "Wel, Welcome to Donau the Flower City."

Shana: "Thank you."

Girl: "Thank god! You don't look like bandits! Your clothes are so filthy that at first I thought you might be!"

Albert: "We really are covered in dust. It's natural the girl would be mistaken."

Shana: "Don't stare at me like that!"

Dart: "It's not that bad."

Rose: "We don't have time for fooling around like that."

Haschel: "Are you jealous?"

Rose: "I am just concerned about the Dragoon Spirit."

[Elsewhere in town, bandits close in on a person...]

????: "Nooooooooo!! What are you going to do!?"

Bandit 1: "We are deciding now! Hee Hee Hee.... As I expected. You are one of the Sacred Sisters of Mille Seseau aren't ya!? You have such a pretty face, don't you!?"

Bandit 2: "Great! Selling her will make us rich!"

Bandit 3: "Don't make a noise and we won't harm you!!"

????: "Some, somebody help!!!"

[Lloyd walks out from a room.]

????: "Oh, Gentleman over there!! P, please...."

Bandit 1: "Just go away! Or you'll be sorry!"

Bandit 2: "Are you gonna get in our way!?"

Lloyd: "Please continue,"

Bandit 1: "What!?"

Lloyd: "If you don't mind dying."

Bandit 1: "YOU are the one to die!! Argh!!"

[Lloyd rebuffs the bandit.]

Bandit 2: "Wh, What did you do!?"

Lloyd: "Shall I continue?"

Bandit 2 & 3: "Ahhh!!"

[They all flee.]

????: "P, Please wait!! I don't know who you are, but thank you very much for helping me!"

Lloyd: "It's nothing."

????: "Oh, please, let me at least have your name!!"

Lloyd: "It's Lloyd."

Wink the Third Sacred Sister: "My, my name is Wink! I am a Sacred Sister of Mille Seseau!! Oh, Lloyd."

[Lloyd's leaves and the allies enter a woman's house.]

Kate: "Oh why, did you go Lynn? We are having a weddingsoon. It's impossible to have a talk with the Gehricks. Who...who are you!?"

Dart: "Don't worry. We are not bandits."

Kate: "Really?"

Shana: "There is something wrong isn't there?"

Albert: "We might be able to be of some help. Tell us."

Kate: "Okay. It all started this morning. When I finished my errands and came home, Lynn was gone. In his letter.... It says he is going to persuade the gang to pull themselves out of Donau. I'm supposed to wait for him at home."



Dart: "He left a letter?"

Kate: "I have an idea!! If I show this letter to the Mayor, he might do something to help! The Mayor is Lynn's father!"

Dart: "I see. Let's bring this to the Mayor. You have to wait for Lynn here."

Kate: "Oh, thank you!" [Acquired Letter from Lynn]

[Dart brings his crew to the mayor's.]

Butler: "You cannot meet the Mayor because he is busy. I'm sorry, but please come back some other time."

Dart: "Can you take a look at this letter?"

Butler: "Th, this is.... P, Please come in!! Mayor! A horrible thing has happened!! It's about Mr. Lynn!!"

Mayor of Donau: "!! What kind of man would venture to face the Gehrich Gang himself?"

Butler: "I didn't know Mr. Lynn was that consumed with...."

Mayor of Donau: "It was my fault for not realizing it!!"

Butler: "I bet Miss Kate is very stressed."

Mayor of Donau: "You must go. As the Mayor, I don't want you to be involved in this."

Dart: "We are already involved. The gang took something very important away from me. Where do they come from?"

Mayor of Donau: "They are from the Valley of Corrupted Gravity, but we don't know anything about them other than that."

Butler: "That place is very dangerous. They say nobody can come back once they enter the valley."

Mayor of Donau: "Butler!! Don't say that!! Lynn...Lynn went there!!"

Butler: "Now, we have to gather the people of Donau to form a rescue team."

Mayor of Donau: "And then what will happen to the city? The gang might take over the city."

Dart: "Let us do it."

Shana: "You were planning to go anyway, weren't you?"

Mayor of Donau: "Oh...it is encouraging to hear that warriors like you are going!! Now, I can face those punks in our city with courage!!"

[Back outside, a commotion is taking place.]

Bandit: "Hey you, alky! How dare you touch my butt!"

????: "Don't be silly! Why would I touch the butt of a kid like you?"

[It's a girl talking with three bandits.]

Bandit: "What did you say!?"

????: "I could forgive you if you'd admit that I am too sexy to ignore and apologize!"

Bandit 2: "Huh? Is this kid dreaming or what?"

????: "I can't stand it anymore!!

[She kicks all of their behinds.]

Bandit: "Ouch...! You!! You don't know who we are!?"

????: "I know."

Bandit: "You think you can get away with it!?"

????: "Let me see.... I think so!"

Bandit: "Darn! You'll pay for this!!"

[They all flee.]

????: "I won't be paying you!!"

Dart: "Doesn't she have a better way to say goodbye?"

????: "Are you one of the Gehrich Gang? Do you want me to smash you too!?"

Haschel: "Platinum hair.... The same as Lloyd. The rest is different."

????: "Are you maybe one of my groupies? Hmm, don't seem like it though. You guys...are some strange group of people. What's your name?"

Dart: "It's Dart."

Meru: "Mine's Meru!! I'm the best dancer in Donau!!"

Rose: "We don't have time for playing with a kid."

Albert: "I agree. We can't waste any time if we are going to help Lynn."

Shana: "Sorry. But we gotta get going."

Meru: "You said Lynn!? Then you guys are going to rescue Lynn!!"

Dart: "How did you find out about that?"

Meru: "'Cuz I heard it from Kate. But people in this city are all chickens, right? So I was gonna make a raid on their hideout! Then those bastards gave me a hard time! I guess they didn't take me seriously 'cuz I'm alone. You know what!! I'm gonna go with you guys!! Hey you don't need to make such a face!!"

Rose: "Just leave her alone. Let's go."

Meru: "Hold on!! Do you guys know where the hideout is?"

Dart: "It's somewhere in the Valley of Corrupted Gravity, isn't it?"

Meru: "Wow, how naive!! You make it sound easy, but you cannot go through such a hell of a kind a place without a person like me whose totally knowledgeable and totally pretty! Besides, you need the Permission of the King, just to enter the valley! Don't ya know that!?"

Shana: "What are we going to do Dart? This girl is serious."

Dart: R1 -> We cannot take you.

R2 -> Oh well, you can come.

R1: "We cannot take you."

Meru: "Why is that!?"

Dart: "It's too dangerous for you."

Meru: "Don't treat me like a kid!! It's not fair! I wanna go with you guys!! I wanna rescue Lynn!!"

R2: [see below.]

Dart: "Oh well, you can come."

Rose: "Are you serious?"

Dart: "We can trust her intentions to rescue Lynn. Besides we don't know the place. We might need a guide."

Meru: "Right!! He's completely right!! Now, let's go! Beautiful dancer Meru, and friends, form a posse for dealing with the Gehrich Gang!!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 24 - Twin Castle at Fletz II TCF2 |  
o-----o

[Everyone arrives after a trip through the Barrens.]

Albert: "We need the permission of the Tiberioan King to enter the Valley of Corrupted Gravity.:"

Dart: "Have you met him?"

Albert: "I think I met him several times when I was little."

Dart: "If the king remembers you, it'll be quick."

Meru: "That's our king! Dignity, huh?"

Albert: "I am not going to reveal my identity. I am not traveling as the King of Serdio. I am traveling as your companion, and Lavitz's friend."

[At the castle gate...]

Meru: "Hey! Can you get out of our way!?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "No way. No strangers can get through here."

Meru: "Never!?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "Never."

Meru: "That big man is blocking our way. I'm gonna take care of that."

[She runs into him.]

Meru: "Ouch!"

Giant Gate Keeper: "I, I didn't do anything. You bumped into me by yourself.  
You can't enter the castle by doing that."

Meru: "Hey big belly! Why can't you let us in!? Hey Al! You are a king!! Can  
you do something about it!?"

Albert: ("Shhh! That's secret!")

Meru: "Aw! Come on! Dart! Do something!"

Dart: "There is no way you can let us in?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "There are lots of bandits walking around. I was told to  
never let anybody in."

Shana: "Can we at least send a message to the King?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "You are...pretty...."

Shana: "Wh, What did you say?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "Oops, I am on duty. I cannot let you in. I cannot let  
strangers in."

Meru: "What are we gonna do?"

Dart: R1 -> (Should we break through?)

R2 -> (Let's retreat now.)

R1: ("Should we break through?")

Rose: ("We are not criminals.")

Meru: "We are breaking through! I'm gonna whack that belly!"

Dart: "Stop it! I was kidding!"

Meru: "Yeh!!"

[Meru goes flying.]

Giant Gate Keeper: "What are you doing?"

Meru: "Ouch!"

Giant Gate Keeper: "I told you so."

[He blows his whistle.]

Giant Gate Keeper: "Don't treat them rough. Just kick them out of  
town."

[They get shown the door.]

Dart: "It's no good. We have to think of some other way."

R2: ("Let's retreat now.")

Haschel: ("It's a sober judgement.")

Giant Gate Keeper: "Oh! Finally you are leaving! Come back if you can find someone to vouch for you."

Albert: "Nello the Green Planner. Do you think he knows somebody in the royal family?"

Haschel: "How about Kaffi!?"

Dart: "Let's go back downtown okay?"

[Everyone crashes at the item shop.]

Fester: "Hmmm... It's a little expensive... If I curtail food... Oh, Dart. Are you looking for something?"

Dart: "No, I am not."

Fester: "Oh, you look troubled. I would like to say I can help you, but I am a little busy now. It will be over soon. I need some materials on stars for my research. I have to look in a couple of more places. I have to go now. When I finish my errand, I'll be available. Ask me whatever you want."

[Dart follows him to the castle entrance.]

Fester: "Oh boy. We run into each other again. Was your problem solved yet?"

Dart: "Not yet. I guess, you are the only person we can ask, Fester."

Fester: "I see. Fine. I have finished my errand. You can come to my house and talk."

[Back at Fester's digs...]

Fester: "Gehrich Gang, I see. They must have taken one of your most important possessions, if you are thinking of venturing directly into their hideout."

Dart: "It's not just a memento. It means more than that to me."

Meru: "We're gonna rescue Lynn, too!"

Fester: "I understand. Shall we go to the castle? I can take care of it. I have a side business in addition to being an astronomer that lets me freely enter the castle."

Meru: "What are you doin' Fester?"

Dart: R1 -> He is from royalty.

R2 -> He is a governor.

R1: "He is from royalty."

Meru: "Wow!!"

Fester: "No, I am not. I think it's Mr. Albet who is....from the class of royalty rather than me."

Albert: "No, no, I don't think so! Anyway, aren't you the governor of Princess Lisa, Mr. Fester?"

Fester: "Yes I am. You can enter the castle by mentioning my name."

R2: "He is a governor."

Fester: "Yes I am. You can enter the castle by mentioning my name."

Meru: "Oh. Can't you answer some other way than that? That's boring."

Dart: "You, you think so?"

[The town bell rings.]

Fester: "It's time to go. Let's head to the Twin Castle. Follow me."

[With Fester, the party gets an audience with King Zior.]

Fester: "I am here, Your Majesty."

King Zior: "Oh, Fester! Please take care of my dear Princess Lisa for today! By the way, I think I have some problem with my eyes. I see many Festers."

Fester: "King Zior... There is only one of me. These people are my friends, Your Majesty."

King Zior: "Oh, indeed there is only one Fester! And, what is their request?"

Albert: "We are here to request permission to enter the Valley of Corrupted Gravity."

King Zior: "Hmm... Fester...I think I've heard of the 'Valley of Corrupted Gravity'... Was it my imagination?"

Fester: "King Zior... Your ears are fine too. These people need to talk to the Gehrich Gang so they would like to go to the Valley of Corrupted Gravity."

King Zior: "Oh, you too! Well, the other day, a young man named Lynn came to me for the same reason. It seems being a daredevil is trendy nowadays."

Dart: "We are not going there for a picnic."

King Zior: "You understand all the risks. Fine. Servant! Bring the pass for them!" [Acquired Pass for the Valley of Corrupted Gravity] "Be careful!"

Dart: "I appreciate this Your Majesty."

King Zior: "It is late already. Why don't you relax in the castle."

[Everyone rests in the castle.]

Fester: "I am going back to work. Princess Lisa's studies are going very well by herself."

[As the party tries to leave...]

Lady's Maid Libria: "Excuse me, Your Majesty Albert. I am Libria, the Lady's maid for Princess Lisa. Princess Lisa had me call you and your company."

Albert: "...Princess Lisa knew of our visit."

Lady's Maid Libria: "She speaks with the stars and knows the future. Astrology shows her the way. This way please."

Dart: "What is going on?"

Albert: "We will find out when we meet Princess Lisa."

[Up at the princess's room...]

Lisa: "Welcome, Albert, the King of Serdio. I am Lisa, the younger sister of Emille. I have invited you here because I have a favor to ask of you."

Meru: "Hey wait a minute! How does she know he's a king?"

Dart: "Albert was talking about it a moment ago, wasn't he? Princess Lisa found out about it through astrology."

Haschel: "Hold there! What the heck is astrology?"

Shana: "It is the telling of a person's fortune from the location of the stars."

Lisa: \*giggle\*.... "You have such amusing friends."

Dart: "Please continue."

Lisa: "It is about my sister Emille."

Albert: "What has happened to the princess? I cannot believe that's her normal self...."

Lisa: "Well, it started a half year ago. Back then, my sister Emille was very kind, and my...or everyone in the country admired her. It all started when the two of us went horseback riding. Suddenly, my sister Emille's horse bucked and ran away to the forest."

Shana: "What about Princess Emille?"

Lisa: "It seemed that my sister lost consciousness, and couldn't control the horse. I chased her with my vassals. My sister was on the ground in the forest. Fortunately, she didn't have any injuries. Everybody felt profound relief. However, when my sister Emille came to, she was a completely different person. Everyone says it is because she hit herself on her head, however, something more than her language and attitude was wrong. It was as if she was a different person..."

Albert: "Does anybody doubt the change? How about King Zior?"

Lisa: "No, instead he was happy to see my sister Emille become so active... I heard you are heading to the Valley of Corrupted Gravity. And I have a favor to ask. I would like you to find out about the relationship between my sister Emille and the Gehrich Gang."

Dart: "The relationship between Princess Emille and the Gehrich?"

Lisa: "Tiberoa appears to be peaceful, however, we are having a serious problem. It is infested with bandits."

Meru: "Donau is totally awful now!"

Lisa: "I know. However, it used to be different. Yes, until a half year ago."

Haschel: "It was the same time Princess Emille began acting strange."

Lisa: "Astrology also says there is some kind of relationship between my sister and the Gehrichs. And one more thing... The stars told me 'Never hand over the Moon'. My sister will celebrate her 20th birthday soon. At the ceremony, the Tiberoan national treasure, the Moon Dagger will be passed down to my sister Emille. I assume the 'Moon' refers to that."

Albert: "The second divine moon object."

Dart: "It is linked with Lloyd."

Lisa: "I have to find out the truth before the ceremony. About the relationship between my sister Emille and the Gehrich Gang. Would you please look into this for me?"

Dart: R1 -> We will.  
R2 -> ...

R1: "We will. We have no reason not to because our original intention was to pursue the Gehrich Gang."

R2: "..."

Albert: "What are you hesitating about?"

Shana: "You are thinking about Lloyd aren't you?"

Dart: "I know there is no reason to say no. But I'm worried if I can fight with him without having a Dragoon Spirit...?"

Haschel: "You...since when have you become such a wimp? Or...maybe you've grown too accustomed to using the power?"

Dart: "I understand...Princess Lisa."

Lisa: "Thank you. I appreciate it."

Voice: "The dinner will be ready soon Your Highness."

Lisa: "Oh, is it already that late? Oh, I forgot about Fester! I left him in my room! I am expecting you there."

Lady's Maid Libria: "King Zior also said to invite everyone. When you are ready please let me know. I will take you to the dining room."



Meru: "I was totally right about coming with you Dart!! I was expecting these things to happen!!"

Haschel: "Right!? I am looking forward to it! I wonder what I can feast on there!"

[Everyone begins their dinner with the King.]

King Zior: "Please make yourself at home! Haa Haa Haa! Isn't she a great eater! It seems when girls become 20 years old they develop quite an appetite! Oh, Fester? Would you introduce our guests to Emille?"

Fester: "Yes, Your Majesty."

Emille: "Oh, I didn't know you were here, Fester. Are you still wasting time on useless things? Those things with moons or stars?"

Fester: "L, let me introduce my friends, Your Highness! This..."

Emille: "You and you. What's your name?"

Dart: "I'm Dart."

Albert: "I am Albert. It is a pleasure to meet you."

Emille: "You are cute guys. I like you."

Fester: "I am glad to hear that. And these..."

Emille: "I didn't ask you about the others."

King Zior: "Oh, please don't be insulted. Emille is a bit shy."

Emille: "I'm not shy! I don't like them. That's all! Hey!! Bring me more food will ya!!"

Lisa: "Please enjoy your meal. I assume you are leaving early tomorrow morning?"

Emille: "Where are you going?"

King Zior: "Well, they are saying that they want to go to the Valley of Corrupted Gravity. They understand the risk so I have granted them permission."

Emille: "Huh! Stupid guys!"

King Zior: "Come on! Enjoy yourself! Let yourself go tonight!"

[Later on, after the dinner, everyone lounges by the balcony.]

Albert: "Can people change that much from only the shock of falling off a horse?"

Haschel: "I can produce the same impact with my fist."

Shana: "It won't work!"

Meru: "Then with my hammer!"

Dart: "It won't work either."

Lisa: "Everyone, it is getting late. Please stay at the castle tonight."

Albert: "Thank you for your concern."

Lisa: "It is fine. It is me asking you the favor. Have a good night."

Lady's Maid Libria: "This way please. I will show you the way to your bedroom."

[Over at the guest room...]

Shana: \*sigh\* "You don't like such a formal feast, do you Dart? Aren't you tired?"

Dart: "I would rather practice with my sword."

Meru: "I didn't have enough to eat! Princess Emille stole my portion!"

Haschel: "Me neither. And I was looking forward to it."

Albert: "I understand Princess Lisa's hardship. But, Princess Emille might lead us to Lloyd. The Moon Dagger is our guide."

Dart: "Everything leads to the Gehrich."

Shana: "It all started with the Dragoon Spirit."

Dart: "We have to get it back quick or it'll be too risky."

Rose: "You shouldn't have let it be taken to start with, then."

Haschel: "You are harsh as always. There are some other ways to say that. Why don't you show a little smile at least?"

Rose: "I don't remember...how to smile. Good night."

Shana: "I'm getting sleepy too."

Albert: "I'll get some sleep too."

Dart: "Good night, Shana."

Haschel: "Being with you young people reminds me of Claire."

Meru: "What's she like?"

Haschel: "She had a strong will. She suffered by herself, decided things by herself."

Meru: "Same here!"

Haschel: "Call me a fond parent, but she looked like her beautiful mother. She was a strong fighter, but her heart was too sweet. It's the complete opposite of Meru."

Meru: "I am a strong fighter too!"

Dart: "That's not the point."

Haschel: "I only taught her how to use her fists, but I wish I could see her in a wedding dress."

Meru: "You can see me in a wedding dress!! I'll be totally beautiful in that! Don't you think?"

Dart: R1 -> Yes, I think so.  
R2 -> I don't know.

R1: "Yes, I think so."

Meru: "Right!? Happy sleeping time!"

R2: "I don't know."

Haschel: "I don't know either. Mature does not have a mature charm."

Meru: "Hey hey! Boring! I'm gonna go to bed!!"

Haschel: "I'll get some sleep too."

[The next morning everyone leaves for the Valley.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 25 - Valley of Corrupted Gravity VLC1 |  
o-----o

[After being let in, the party surveys the odd, fractured, floating landscape]

Meru: "Oh! It's not bad at all! I was expecting to have some fun!"

Dart: "!! Meru, watch out!!"

[A rock bounds upward and almost crushes Meru.]

Meru: "Oh my god!!"

Rose: "It still has the backwash from the Dragon Campaign. The collision of the magic power of the Dragoons and Winglies can distort nature quite a bit. I don't think you're gonna have 'fun' from now on."

Meru: "I'm not just following you guys for that! Let's go guys! We gotta find the Gehrichs!"

[After going through a bit...]

Dart: "!!"

Rose: "What a welcome we got."

Shana: "Oh, look!"

Dart: "Virage!!"

Meru: "Huh? What the heck is that?"

Rose: "What is worse is it has the complete form...."

Meru: "Guys! I'm asking you what is that!"

Dart: "It might be the real cause of the distortion of the valley."

Meru: "Wow! That's scary."

Dart: "Shana?"

Shana: "Here it comes again. I hear the voice, again. Don't go! It's too dangerous to go!"

Meru: "Yes, we gotta go. We're not gonna make it to the Gehrichs without going over this thingamajig. What are you looking at!? You guys don't trust me!?"

Dart: "Is there no way but to advance?"

Shana: "I can't let you go! If we advance we will have to fight again!"

Meru: "Hey, nothing can be done without meeting the Gehrichs, right? What about Lynn, Dart's memento, and this Lloyd that you are looking for."

Dart: "Worrying won't help. Besides, it might not start to move this time."

[It starts to move.]

Shana: "Everybody run!!"

[The Virage almost falls over the edge, but turns towards Shana.]

Dart: "Shana!!"

[Light comes out of Shana and pushes Virage off the cliff.]

Rose: "Shana! What on earth are you...to Virage?"

Shana: "I don't know... I don't know anything!!"

Dart: "There is no more Virage!!"

Shana: "Da-rt. It's okay now."

Rose: (The power that can awake the sleep of 11,000 years.... Is that rancor against us? The rancor against Dragoons awakening the Virage!? Or.... is that something to do with Shana?)

Dart: (Shana....)

---

Shana: "After you came back, Dart, a lot of things started to happen. But we have overcome everything, and we will continue. Because I am not alone now. Everybody is with me and, I have you...Dart. You make me strong. I can do it! I can leave any time!"

---

Haschel: "Shana has changed. She has obtained more strength."

Dart: "I agree."

Haschel: "I don't know what is happening to Shana, but she is trying to solve

that alone. She has become a woman."

Dart: "I guess so."

Haschel: "It's not the time to talk about this but.... It's time for you to change."

Dart: "Me?"

Haschel: "It's too hard on Shana if you continue to treat her like a mere baby sister forever. Doesn't matter. Your Dragoon Spirit is waiting. We have to think about going."

---

Albert: "We were saved by Shana. But it seems that this is not that simple for her. The existence of Dragoons and the existence of Virages should have ended 11,000 years ago. But they were brought to life around us. I think we have to go forward to find out more about this."

---

Rose: "There must be something wrong with Shana, and she must definitely see it. Everybody knows that."

---

Meru: "Thanks for my guiding you, it was totally thrilling wasn't it!? Now we can go straight to the Gehrich Gang! We can go rescue Lynn!"

[After talking to everyone...]

Dart: "Let's go everybody! The Gehrichs will be just ahead!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 26 - Home of Giganto HGG1 |  
o-----o

[At a large gate...]

Dart: "I sense the enemy's presence."

[Arrows come his way.]

Dart: "!!!"

Gehrich Gang B: "I don't know what you want, and how did you manage to get all the way here!?"

Gehrich Gang D: "We should play with them a little!!"

Gehrich Gang C: "Yo men!! Don't kill'em!! That's what our boss said!! But...."

Gehrich Gang A: "Why don't we stomp them till they hate being alive!! Haa Haa Haa! Shoot'em!!"

[Dart tries to escape further in, but a door shuts.]

Gehrich Gang A: "You thought it would be that easy, huh!? Shoot'em!!"

[They try to leave again, but enemies block their way.]

Gangster B: "Hee Hee Hee!! Where are you goin'!?"

[After missing their strikes awhile...]

Gehrich Gang A: "Darn!! Those nimble rats!!"

Gehrich Gang B: "Yo, brother!! Take care of them will ya!!"

Gangster A: "Yeah! I got'em!! It's been a while. I'm aching to get'em!!"

Dart: "Let us meet with your boss!! We have to talk!!"

Gangster A: "There will be no 'talkin'! You've already ruined our territory!"

Haschel: "!! That pose, it must be from the Rouge School!"

Gangster A: "What!? How do you know about that!?"

Haschel: "That's my question! How did you find out about the Rouge School!?"

Gangster A: "Humph!! Who cares!! If you really wanna laern about it, tussle with me!"

[They all get defeated.]

Bandit 1: "R, Run!!"

Bandit 2: "Yeek!!"

Haschel: "The Rouge School of Martial Arts is a tradition found only in my village. All the people who use the Rouge style from outside of my village must have a connection there. Do you know a woman fighter called Claire?"

Gangster: "I, I don't know any such woman! I learned it from my boss, Gehrich!"

Haschel: "Gehrich...."

Gangster: "My boss used to study it seriously, but was kicked out 20 years ago. Then he became a bandit!"

Haschel: "Kicked out.... Now I know!! That Gehrich!! He must be the man who was once my disciple!!"

Dart: "He is over there, right?"

Gangster: "Y, yeah! But! You cannot defeat my boss! My boss is ten times as strong as me!!"

Haschel: "It's my fist that decides if I can defeat him or not!!"

[The gangster flees.]

Haschel: "We're on our way."

Dart: "What are you doing?"

Haschel: "I'll show you what the real Rouge School is like. YAAAAAAAAA!!"

YAA!!!!"

[A single punch demolishes the huge barrier to Gehrich.]

Haschel: "Shall we?"

[Continuing on a ways...]

Albert: "It seems obvious there are bandits hiding."

Dart: "Let's start looking here."

Shana: "What's wrong?"

Haschel: "I think I did too much. My back hurts. Don't worry. I'll be all right if I rest a little."

Meru: "Men! You should've thought about your age! Go ahead, I'll take care of him."

Haschel: "Hm. You will? I think I can wait here by myself...."

Meru: "No way! We don't know when they will come back!"

Dart: "We gotta leave them, then. We'll be back if something happens."

[Dart and his crew leave Meru and Haschel to wait.]

Meru: "If they come back, I'll destroy them! Be good, Haschel. Ah...."

[Haschel smacked her and knocked her out.]

Haschel: "Sorry about that."

[He runs off on his own into Gehrich's lair.]

Dart: "I guess there are only Rock Fireflies here. Meru!! What happened!?"

Meru: "Ouch... Um... Something bumped into me and... Oh boy? Where is Haschel?"

Dart: "Did he go by himself?"

[In Gehrich's chamber...]

Mappi: "Hee hee hee!! I cannot stop laughing! Boss! They came all the way here! I guess that pebble I took was super important."

Gehrich: "There are too many people who don't care about their lives. The snotnose from Donau too."

Mappi: "Let's just kill that kid! I don't care that he's the son of the Mayor! I got that woman with us now! Now is a good chance, cuz the woman is in control of the palace.... It'll be a piece of cake to take over this country...."

Gehrich: "My fist doesn't desire that kind of thing. I just want to live free. If she wants the power, I'll give it to her."

Mappi: "Boss!! You're gonna be taken advantage of, being a wimp like that!!"

Haschel: "Gehrich, you haven't changed a bit."

Mappi: "Who are you!?"

Haschel: "Shut up, you small fry."

Mappi: "What did you say!? Boss? Is something wrong?"

Gehrich: "M, Master...."

Mappi: "Master of the Rouge School?"

Haschel: "Head of the bandits? How low you have fallen. I was right to kick you out."

Gehrich: "Yes!! You were right!! Thanks to you I obtained freedom. I am not the person you remember!!"

Haschel: "Martial arts is your heart. When you hit, your fist aches, and your heart aches. Except, it seems your heart has forgotten the ache."

Gehrich: "...."

Mappi: "Shut up!! I'll shut you up!!"

[Dart slaps Mappi away from Haschel.]

Mappi: "!!"

Dart: "Have I kept you waiting!?"

Meru: "It's not fair leaving me like that!!"

Haschel: "You...."

Gehrich: "Then why don't you remind me of your so-called aching heart!!"

[The party defeats Mappi & Gehrich.]

Mappi: "I'll smash you!!"

[The room shakes, and part of a statue falls towards Haschel.]

Gehrich: "Please run!! Master!!"

Albert: "It's hopeless!!"

[All of a sudden, Kongol catches the debris and throws it to the wayside.]

Kongol: "Whhhoooooaaaaahhhhh!!!"

Dart: "Kongol!?"

Haschel: "Gehrich.... Now I seem to be helping you remember the ache in your heart with my fist."

Dart: "Will he make it?"

Haschel: "Barely, at least for now. But if the Giganto over there hadn't saved us, he would be completely dead by now...and all of us too."



Dart: "Kongol, why are you here? And, why did you save us?"

Rose: "It's a strange way to get revenge on us. What's going on in your mind?"

Kongol: "You enemy no more. Here Holy place of Gigantos. Me survivor."

Shana: "What about the other Gigantos?"

Kongol: "Human killed us. They stole Giganto's treasure. Human thinks other species can die. Human selfish creature."

Albert: "That was the reason why you joined with the human's war?"

Kongol: "It's for Emperor Doel. Me still small and ran. He saved Kongol. He fought against bad people. Kongol comes with you. So Kongol is here. Emperor Doel say he make world where every species equal. World needs strong leader. Whether you can be leader, Kongol will watch to the end. Giganto's sadness should not be repeated...."

Rose: "There is no such world where 'equal' exists. What we have is killing and being killed. That's it."

Dart: "Wait! I have my own objectives. I am just continuing my journey towards them. I don't think I make a good 'leader'."

Kongol: "You defeat Emperor Doel. Strong Strong Power. Stronger than Emperor Doel. Kongol wants to see where the power goes."

Meru: "Sounds good doesn't it? Cuz more people makes us feel more secure. Besides.... I understand how he feels to be attracted to you, Dart. There must be something wherever you go. I still dunno what it is but...I wanna be with you and do something. Don't you guys feel that way?"

Dart: "...Okay. We are friends now."

Kongol: "...Friend. It sounds good."

Meru: "We did it!"

Rose: "You have forgotten the most important thing."

Meru: "Come on! We gotta find Lynn!"

Shana: "The Dragoon Spirit too!"

Kongol: "What you are looking for may be down there. You push the thing up here."

Dart: "Is this it?"

[A button on the throne shows a room below it.]

Gehrich: "Ugh...!!!"

Haschel: "Gehrich, you have come around."

Gehrich: "I'm glad...to receive your fist, Master...."

Haschel: "Shut up. Talking makes you die."

Gehrich: "I gotta tell you...this or...I'll die as a real fool.... It's about the Princess Emille in the Castle.... She's...a fake.... That woman was switched.... Ugh...!!"

Haschel: "Don't say anything!"

Gehrich: "Ugh...!! The real one is hidden in...the castle....."

[Gehrich dies, and Haschel carries him.]

Haschel: "I'll catch up to you later. I have to entomb him."

[Down in the treasury...]

Meru: "Lynn!! Where are you!?"

Lynn: "Meru!! Are you here to rescue me!?"

Meru: "Of course! Kate't totally worried about ya! Oh no? I'm letting you out now!!"

Albert: "This opens it. If your brawn doesn't work, you should use your brain."

Lynn: "Meru! Thanks!! Do you know these people?"

Meru: "These are my pals! We are traveling together for a variety of reasons!"

Lynn: "You came all the way to such a dangerous place.... What great people!! Thank you!! People's courage hasn't dried up yet!"

Dart: "You showed it yourself."

Meru: "But, why did you come alone?! I had lots of things to say to the gang too!"

Lynn: "I wanted to solve this by myself. Besides, I thought I might be able to talk to Gehrich if he hadn't changed. But something had changed. Probably, the person who joined him a half year ago changed Gehrich."

Albert: "And that person is now assuming the form of Princess Emille. We need to go back to the castle quickly."

Rose: "That's after we find the stolen Dragoon Spirit."

Lynn: "Any stolen goods should be around here. They were throwing all the stolen items in here."

Shana: "Now, let's split up and look for it."

Dart: "I got it!!"

Meru: "Wow!!"

Shana: "It seems happy to meet you again." [Acquired Red-Eye Dragoon Spirit]

Dart: "Now let's go back to Fletz and see Princess Lisa and tell her everything!"

[Back upstairs...]

Kongol: "Did you find thing?"

Haschel: "It seems you found both Lynn and the Dragoon Spirit."

[Back at The Barrens...]

Meru: "Hey! We'll be in Donau soon! Go home quick to her, you handsome man!  
Kate's worrying!"

Lynn: "Dart, I cannot thank you enough. But I have to say it, thank you. Now  
Donau is saved."

Dart: "It's just the beginning. The Mayor must be taking action now, in  
response to your courage, Lynn."

Meru: "Finally. That Mayor is taking action."

Dart: "Thank you for your guidance, Meru."

Meru: "What are you talking about? It's not over yet."

Dart: "What?"

Meru: "Dart's journey won't be easy. What you guys do is not normal. Monsters  
like Virage appear, Dragoons, Gigantos. I thought they only existed in  
fairy tales. I can't explain it, but I think there'll be a lot of things  
I can help you with. So, why don't we go to Fletz now? We can't  
procrastinate like this, right!?"

Dart: "It'll continue to be like a traveling three-ring circus."

Meru: "All right!!"

Lynn: "I'm going."

Dart: "Say hello to Kate."

Lynn: "Please come to our wedding! I'm having it tomorrow if it's possible.  
Bon voyage!!"

[Everyone hotfoots it to Fletz.]

-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 27 - Twin Castle at Fletz (III) TCF3 |  
-----o

[Everyone arrives in Fletz as the 20th-birthday celebration takes place.]

Dart: "That sound, it can't be."

Albert: "It seems the ceremony for Princess Emille's coming of age celebration  
has already started."

Meru: "We just found out that Princess Emille is a fake."

Shana: "It doesn't necessarily mean that the Moon Dagger has already been  
passed on."

Dart: "Let's go!"

[Everyone scoots into the palace.]

Giant Gate Keeper: "Bad people! Coming in without permission. Just kidding. I excuse you, because today is such a happy day."

Dart: "When did it start?"

Giant Gate Keeper: "A moment ago. But just asking doesn't mean you have an invitation. It's so packed you couldn't fit a penny in. Look."

[A weird guard is up top.]

Giant Gate Keeper: "She suddenly got a lot of hanger-ons. There are so many new faces that I have never seen before. and according to rumor, they used to be bandits. See, bad attitude, right? They call themselves knights, but nobody can say anything because it's Princess Emille. Oh!! Don't tell anybody about this! And I'll let you in."

[The guy leaves.]

Bandit Knight A: "Who the hell are you? They're busy with an important ceremony. Don't even think about bothering them."

Dart: "They are not decent knights..."

Bandit Knight A: "Can't you see our armor!? We are the authentic Knights of Tiberoa!"

Dart: "Is Princess Emille in there?"

Bandit Knight A: "Whoa! You can't go in there. It's not a place for commoners like you. Cuz it's the birthday of our princess! Do you really think you can get away with making a scene like that!?"

Dart: "It's special today."

Bandit Knight B: "Are, are you gonna...make an enemy of all of Tiberoa!?"

Albert: ("Seems like bluffing is working.")

Shana: "Can you send a message to Princess Lisa?"

Bandit Knight A: "She's not here! And it's the birthday of her own sis!! I guess she is keeping herself cooped up in her room!"

Dart: "I'll be back. Then I'm going to get past you."

[Up in the Star Tower, where Princess Lisa awaits...]

Lisa: "I have been waiting for you, everyone. I am ready. Please tell me the truth..."

Dart: "The Princess Emille attending the ceremony is a fake. A woman who is helping the bandits made the switch a half year ago."

Albert: "The star of Princess Lisa has shown the truth."

Lisa: "Oh thank god... It is impossible for my sister Emille to have such an attitude. Now, where is my true sister, Emille!?"

Albert: "It seems she is confined somewhere in this castle."

Lisa: "Confined...somewhere in here?"

Haschel: "It was the last words of a dying man... We can trust him."

Dart: "It all started out at the time of a horseback ride a half year ago... By taking advantage of the confusion, the mysterious woman switched herself with Princess Emille, and took over Tiberoa with the cooperation of bandits..."

Albert: "It's an amazing plot."

Rose: "The finale was to be the Coming of Age ceremony when the Moon Dagger was passed down..."

Dart: "Princess Lisa! We have to find Princess Emille or we cannot stop the ceremony!"

Shana: "Is it possible to use astrology to find Princess Emille!?"

Lisa: "Let me try."

[Lisa uses a power in her hands that glows radiantly.]

Lisa: "... All the stars are refusing to tell their story... As if a mist is covering the night sky."

Dart: "Then we just have to search every nook and cranny..."

Lisa: "Let me come with you. When I am with you, you may be able to avoid some trouble."

[Back in the main hall...]

Bandit Knight: "Oops! Princess Lisa!! Are you already feeling better... Hee..."

Lisa: "Shall I go in?"

Bandit Knight: "We cannot..."

Dart: "Why is that?"

Bandit Knight: "We were told that nobody, not even Princess Lisa, can come in til the Moon Dagger is passed on..."

[The party infiltrates the Moon Tower's summit.]

Bandit Knight: "If you wanna talk to Princess Emille, go to the Chamber of the Sun! Oh, Pr, Princess Lisa...!? How are you feeling...?"

Lisa: "I feel much better. I have to go into my sister Emille's room. Can I come in?"

Shana: "It's far away from the bottom of the tower."

Rose: "Screams won't be heard down there... Why don't we settle this here?"

Bandit Knight: "Damn it!!"

[They flee.]

Lisa: "Shall we go? If the real sister Emille is in this castle, she must be somewhere in this room."

[Emille's room looks normal, but...]

Lisa: "It is awful..."

Dart: "Somebody looted the place..."

Albert: "That makes this room even more suspicious. We might find something here to help us find Princess Emille...."

Kongol: "Kongol go outside, watch."

Meru: "Kongol is too big for this room. I feel sorry for him. I'm gonna go wait with Kongol!"

Haschel: "I'm going too. There are too many people in this room."

Dart: "Let's split up and search."

[Dart inspects the painting of Emille.]

Dart: "It is a portrait of Princess Emille. Wow!!"

[Everyone gets sucked inside.]

Haschel: "What was that noise!?"

Meru: "There's nobody here!"

[In some weird quasidimensional space...]

Dart: "Where are we...? What on earth has happened!?"

Rose: "It seems a Magical space was created in the painting. It seems peculiar..."

Dart: "Is this 'magic'!?"

Voice: "Dart! Where are you!?"

Dart: "We are in the painting!!"

Voice: "Haschel! They must be talking about this!"

Albert: "Don't touch the painting! It seems to be linked to the world over here!"

Voice: "I got it!"

Dart: "Look!!"

[The real Emille is right nearby.]

Lisa: "Emille!! Sister Emille!!"

Dart: "It is too dangerous to go!!"

Albert: "Oh... She is Princess Emille..."

Rose: "It is linked with a different dimension... It is too dangerous to jump over."

Albert: "She is right in front of us.... How can we?"

[Dart inspects a weird white light on the wall, making a bridge.]

Dart: "We can cross now!!"

Albert: "Princess Emille!"

Lisa: "Sister! Sister!! Sister Emille!! Please wake up!! I cannot wake her!"

Albert: "Let me do it! Princess Emille!! Wake up!! Wake up at once or something irrevocable will happen to Tiberoa!!"

Emille: "Ah... Ahh..."

Lisa: "Oh Emille!!"

[The spell's broken.]

Emille: "Lisa... And you...? Where...am I?"

Lisa: "You have been sleeping for the past six months since we went for a horseback ride, sister."

Emille: "A half year? I was sleeping...the half year since the horseback ride... What about the Coming of Age ceremony!? Yes...what about the Moon Dagger!?"

Dart: "It is about to be passed over to another person!"

Emille: "Can you explain that to me? About this other person and you?"

[Dart does.]

Emille: "It seems I've troubled you a lot due to my absence. Let us go to the Chamber of the Sun. We have to let people know the truth."

[They all hurry to the Chamber of the Sun.]

Bandit Knight: "Oops!! It's Princess E, Emille...!?"

Emille: "Did I make it in time for the ceremony?"

Bandit Knight: "Ye, Yes!!"

Emille: "Shall we go?"

[In the throne room...]

King Zior: "You've been filled with 20 years of experience since you came into this world. You have reached the age that deserves the succession of the Moon Dagger as an heir to the throne of Tiberoa. Never forget the blessings of the Sun, Moon and Stars. Anybody!! Are there any objections!?! I assume this silence to be the approval of the succession."

Dart: "Wait!!!"

Emille: "I have an objection to the succession!"

King Zior: "Oh my god!?! There are two Emilles!! !!"

[The fake Emille steals the Moon Dagger.]

King Zior: "The Moon Dagger! What is going on!?"

Dart: "King Zior! That girl is a fake!"

Emille: "I have been put into a sleep for the last half year. During that time, it seems this person was making a variety of social missteps."

Lisa: "Father! That woman was going to take over Tiberoa, by forming a conspiracy with the Gehrich Gang!"

King Zior: "Oh my god!?"

Fake Princess Emille: "Huh!! I guess you found out about everything!! Don't ya think it's too late? I got this in my hand."

Dart: "Look around yourself."

Fake Princess Emille: "You think I'm cornered, huh?"

Dart: "Who are you?"

Fake Princess Emille: "I guess I cannot run in this stuffy dress. This will be a treat! Let me show ya my true self!!"

Dart: "!!!"

Lenus: "Surprised, huh? This is the true self of Miss Lenus!"

Dart: "Princess Emille!! Please leave the room with the King and Princess Lisa!! The Gehrich Gang has fallen apart! Give us the Moon Dagger!"

Albert: "The only chance you have is to give up."

Lenus: "A girl in love doesn't know the meaning of the words 'give up'! I have managed to get this for my love. I won't give this up so easily."

Rose: "I'm sorry but you don't have time to be in love anymore. Because you will die here."

Lenus: "Interesting! Why don't you try!?"

Dart: "What the heck is on her back!?"

[Lenus gets trounced.]



Lenus: "You are not bad, I guess...."

Albert: "Give us the Moon Dagger. Don't waste your time on this meaningless battle."

Haschel: "Gehrich is already dead."

Lenus: "Gehrich!? I didn't care about the man from the beginning! I told ya!? I need the Moon Dagger for my love!"

Dart: "Admit your defeat. There is no way to escape."

Lenus: "No way to escape, huh!? Hey you over there! What do you think of that!?"

Meru: "..."

Lenus: "Whatever! See for yourself! Is there no way to escape?!"

[She jumps over the railing and...flies away!?)

Lenus: "Bye now!!"

Dart: "Wait!!"

Albert: "Oh no... She is a Wingly!?"

Rose: "The species that dominated the bygone world... She's a survivor."

King Zior: "'People of magic who run across the sky with wings'... Was she here to take it back from Humans?"

[Later on...]

King Zior: "You are the King of Serdio, Albert. Why did you take such a risk?"

Albert: "It might be self-gratification. However, I would like to settle my friend's old score, with my own hands. We are pursuing a man who manipulated the war with Serdio from behind the scenes. My friend was killed by that man. At the same time, the Moon Gem, which belonged to Serdio, was taken away. We have different reasons, however we are all linked to that man, and here we are."

King Zior: "You said the Moon Gem. It is a legacy of the Winglies, isn't it?"

Dart: "Could you please tell us about the Moon Dagger Your Majesty?"

King Zior: "It was after the Dragon Campaign. Humans defeated the Winglies and built Serdio, Tiberora and Mille Seseau. They say the few surviving Winglies sent a divine object of the moon as a proof of peace to the three countries. That's all I know about the legend."

Albert: "We have the same legend in my country. What is dangerous is that we Humans don't know what the divine moon object is for."

Dart: "You mean the Winglies know everything and formed this entire conspiracy?"

Emille: "Father. We have to take the Moon Dagger back. Before the stars that have beheld Tiberora are lost in a shadow."

King Zior: "It seems that girl of the Winglies got away to Illisa Bay. Now, it's time for an appearance by Commodore Puler. I will send the most powerful warship that Tiberoa has, the Queen Fury. Have Commodore Puler pursue her. Of course, you are more than welcome to be on the boat."

Dart: "I appreciate it, Your Majesty."

King Zior: "It was the first time I've seen a Wingly. But they seem to be beyond our power...so that...we might need your help."

Emille: "Please take care of yourselves."

[The party goes to Donau's harbor.]

Shana: "Is this a ship?"

Kongol: "Kongol is excited. This bigger than me."

Dart: "So, this is the Queen Fury?"

Kayla: "!? You must be Dart!?"

Dart: "Yes, I am, and you?"

Kayla: "My name is Kayla! I'm a crew member on the Queen Fury! I'm getting the Commodore now! Commodore!! Commodore Puler!! Dart and his friends are here!"

Puler: "What Kayla!? Be quiet! A man of the sea should have a big heart. Sometimes you listen to the waves, and cast your dreams to the ocean. That is a man's romance!!"

Kayla: "Commodore! Dart and his firnedes are here! You got an order from the King didn't you sir?"

Puler: "Oh! You are the brave young people who routed the bandits! You deserve to be guests on my ship! The Queen Fury!"

Dart : "Thank you. But we don't want to be treated as guests. We have the same objective, to pursue Lenus."

Puler: "Hmmm!! I like that!!"

Kayla: "We are ready to go, sir!!"

Puler: "I see. Now the only thing left is for you to board. As soon as you are ready, we will hit the ocean!!"

Kayla: "We have been waiting for you! Are you ready to go?"

R1 -> Please wait a little.

R2 -> Yes.

R1: "Please wait a little."

Kayla: "Please hurry up! Or we will lose the person we are pursuing!"

R2: "Yes."

Kayla: "Now, let's set sail!!"

[All aboard the Queen Fury...!]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 28 - The Queen Fury TQF1 |  
o-----o

[Dart's party lazes around the ship, all in different areas. Shana is near a railing with some seagulls.]

Shana: "Many things have happened. I was put in jail...and Dart came to rescue me. ... We were with Lavitz. And now we are here, pursuing Lloyd. There are so many things I don't understand. The Moon That Never Sets, the voice of Virage.... I wish I could fly like you guys. But it doesn't take me anywhere. ... Dart will laugh at me. Dart, I wonder where he went?"

[Shana eventually finds Dart on the bridge.]

Shana: [Here you are, Dart.] "Hi, Dart. Dart?"

Puler: "When Humans go to sea, there is a lot to think about. Friendship, love, life and romance! Probably Dart's heart is wandering in the mother ocean."

Shana: [Such a scary face. He must be thinking about the Black Monster.]

Dart: "Oh, Shana.... Is something wrong?"

Shana: "I have been thinking too. About the past and future. And about you and me...."

Dart: "You and me?"

Shana: "Eventually, our journey will end."

Dart: "Yes, eventually. But.... I wonder where we will be?"

Shana: "I want to be next to you, Dart. But.... Nobody knows about the future."

[Shana quickly leaves.]

Puler: "Love and sailing are alike. If you don't swim against the waves and just enjoy it, you will overcome it. Thinking alone is sometimes good. But sometimes, when you listen to others, your way will open up."

Dart: [The Black Monster, I still don't know anything about it. Maybe, Rose might know something about it.]

[Dart seeks out Rose at the crow's-nest.]

Dart: [Here you are, Rose.] "Here you are."

Rose: "May I help you?"

Dart: "It's about the Black Monster. I thought you might know something about it, Rose."

Rose: "That's right. You are traveling just for that.... Unfortunately, I have nothing to tell you."

Dart: "Oh...."

Rose: "What are you going to do when you catch the Black Monster, what are you going to do with him? Kill him to avenge your parents? That'll satisfy your feelings?"

Dart: "'Revenge does not generate anything.' That's what I learned from Lavitz. To tell the truth, I don't know what I am going to do or even what I want to do when I face the Black Monster. I just want to know what he is."

Rose: "I see.... Well, I can tell you one thing. Do you know what is the source of the power of Dragoons? War is not in human nature. Humans fight by making themselves enter insanity. It is...the same for revenge. This is a tool to amplify the insanity. And this insanity is the source of the power of Dragoons, the Dragon Knight."

Dart: "I didn't know that...."

Rose: "Someday, something will happen, and if you cannot chasten your insanity, I wonder if you will be able to endure it, given the size of your spirit? Sorry. It was just nonsense."

Dart: "It's okay. When I finish with Lloyd, I'll go on my journey to pursue the Black Monster. When I face him, I'll find my own answer to that."

[Dart leaves.]

Rose: "Mine is not a 'journey'.... I'll take a walk for a change."

[She eventually finds Haschel sitting alone.]

Rose: [Haschel....] "Are you thinking about something?"

Haschel: "Oh, Rose. Do you want to talk about your love?"

Rose: "I was just walking around and happened to be here."

Haschel: "Can I ask you one thing?"

Rose: "Sure."

Haschel: "You, why are you with us? I heard that in the beginning it was Dart's Dragoon Spirit. It seems that's not all."

Rose: "I guess.... Maybe this journey is just a little break for me...."

Haschel: "'Break,' hmm. Well, everybody has different objectives on the journey. But you, you look like you're rushing yourself to death, with your life being run by something."

Rose: "It's none of your business."

[Rose walks away.]

Haschel: "I guess I was involved too much. I cannot make judgments about other people."

[Flashback: Haschel's home village 25 years ago. His daughter is fighting.]

Claire: "Taa!"

Haschel: "Claire!! Your steps during the attack are slow!! Take more precise, faster steps!!"

Claire: "Yes, Father."

Haschel: "You idiot! During the training, don't think of me as your 'Father'! Call me 'Master'!"

Claire: "I am sorry, Master."

[Present-day Haschel says the next line.]

Haschel: "Claire.... You, my daughter, were the only heir to our ancestral Rouge School martial art."

[Claire starts fighting again.]

Claire: "Yaa! Here!"

Haschel: "Claire!! You cannot take over the Rouge School with such pathetic skills!!"

Claire: "Daa!"

Haschel: "You implanted a murderous intention in your fist, didn't you!?"

Claire: "Oh Lotta.... What's wrong? Lotta? What's wrong!? Oh! Lotta!?"

Haschel: "Get out of my sight!!"

Claire: "Lotta...."

Haschel: "Get out of my sight!!"

[Claire gets run off. Back on the ship.]

Haschel: "... I shouted out of anger. I was just running away from the pain that we have to overcome together, as a Master and as a Father. It's been 20 years since I left the village pursuing Claire, but what I have found was only my immaturity. As time goes by, I forget the objectives of my journey. But Dart and the others gave me a new one. I think...what I am going through now is a journey to support the passion of young Dart and his friends. Oops! Oops! I have become too mushy! Well, maybe I'll go tease Kongol! I hope he is not knocked out with seasickness!"

[Haschel goes to pester Kongol in the fore engine room.]

Haschel: [Here you are, Kongol.] "What are you doing alone?"

Kongol : "Kongol always alone."

Haschel: "You are not now."

Kongol : "Friends. I still don't know. Kongol is here to see if you become

leader instead of Emperor Doel."

Haschel: "Doel.... It was your objective for the journey, wasn't it? Hmm, then why don't you talk to Albert? He might know something about Doel's story from the past."

Kongol : "King of Human...."

[Haschel leaves, and Kongol seeks out Albert in his room.]

Kongol: [Human king, Albert.] "Kongol wants talk. What is friends? Dart said, Kongol friend. Kongol don't know. What is friend?"

Albert: "My Uncle Doel was your friend...wasn't he?"

Kongol: "No. I fight for Emperor Doel. To make a world where all the species equal."

Albert: "Maybe we can put it this way. Maybe 'friends' are the people who walk the same road. People who walk together, but not led by somebody, who share happiness and pain."

Kongol: "That is friends...?"

Albert: "Yes. That is us now. Although we have different objectives, we are walking side by side. Kongol. You are already walking the same road as us."

[Kongol leaves.]

Meru: "Boring!! Anybody, wanna hang out with me!!"

Albert: "It's tahnks to those girls. I can continue to walk on this road. Now, I'm going to socialize with my friends too."

[Albert goes to chill with Meru.]

Albert: "You are having fun as always."

[She hits him with a pillow.]

Meru: "I gotcha!!! Big success!!"

Albert: "It's an awful welcome."

Meru: "Hey, Al. You are a bit too squarish. You gotta become cool like Dart... Are you mad now?"

Albert: "No. But I now have a question."

Meru: "Wow!? The exciting question time!?"

Albert: "Meru, when you joined us, you said 'There is still something I can help with'. Is that true?"

Meru: "Um.... ILet me see. I dunno why but I really feel that way. It's true. But, I dunno what it is."

Albert: "You are not just kidding it seems. Our journey is a dangerous one. We will not be able to succeed, if we take a lackadaisical attitude

towards it. Therefore, I wanted to make sure one more time. I don't want to see anybody else dying. Now, please excuse me."

[Albert bails.]

Meru: "Whatever. The King became too serious. Now is my big chance!! To hang out with Dart!!"

[She goes to the bridge.]

Meru: [A Dart spotted! Thinking about something...? I know! Hee hee hee.]

"Who do you think it is?"

R1 -> Is that you Shana?

R2 -> Of course, it's Meru!

R3 -> No way...it's Rose?

R4 -> Albert, don't be silly.

R5 -> Haschel...quit that voice.

R6 -> I doubt it, but, Kongol?

R1: "Is that you Shana?"

Meru: "Hey! You! Don't you have anything else to think about!?"

Dart: "Oh, it's you Meru."

Meru: "What is that 'Oh' about!"

Dart: "S, sorry."

R2: "Of course, it's Meru!"

Meru: "Wow! How did you know?"

Dart: "There is nobody else who does such pranks."

Meru: "I guess so."

R3: "No way...it's Rose?"

Meru: "Of course."

Dart: "Wh, what do you want?"

Meru: "I have something to tell ya! Oops, tell you. I, like you ...Dart..."

Dart: "Wh, what are you saying? I, I have Shana."

Meru: "Hey! Are you an idiot or what!? I have such a pretty voice, it can't be anybody else but me!!"

Dart: "M, Meru...."

Meru: "BY THE WAY...."

Dart: "Wha, what?"

Meru: "Well! I won't tell Shana about this!"

R4: "Albert, don't be silly."

Meru: "Yes, I am. I am the King of Serdio, Albert. I am the most important person in this country. I don't think so!!"

Dart: "I knew it, it's you Meru."

R5: "Haschel...quit that voice."

Meru: "You, You really think so?"

Dart: "You never change Haschel. You always like pranks."

Meru: "I'm not, I'm not an old man."

Dart: "S, Sorry! I was just kidding!"

Meru: "Really?"

Dart: "It's impossible to mistake your pretty voice."

Meru: "Of course!"

R6: "I doubt it, but, Kongol?"

Meru: "Yes. Kongol don't speak with forked tongue. I don't think so!!"

Dart: "I knew it was you, Meru."

Meru: "Well! I have great news for someone who looks totally bored. Why don't ya come with me on an adventure on this ship?"

Dart: "I've already seen a lot."

Meru: "Hey! You were thinking about Shana, weren't you! If she sees you walking with a pretty girl like me, she would get mad, wouldn't she?"

Dart: "Shana doesn't get mad about those things. What's with this adventure, suddenly?"

Meru: ("Well.... There is something bothering me. Don't ya think Rose is strange?")

Dart: "She is strange, but I don't think she is as strange as you."

Meru: "I'm not talking about that strange! I think she has something that she hasn't told us or she has been involved in something shady or...."

Dart: "Have you told us everything about you, Meru?"

Meru: "I'm the exception!"

Dart: "Don't talk bad about your friends. Everybody has something that they need to hide."

Meru: "Sorry. I don't mean to talk bad about Rose, but she's cold to me.... So somehow...."

Dart: "Then you want a change of pace with an adventure?"



Meru: "That's my Dart! You are totally cool! Come on! Now departing on Meru's expedition!!"

Dart: "Meru's expedition huh...?"

[Meru joins Dart for awhile; they go towards the crow's-nest.]

Dart: [Rose....]

[Meru goes behind her.]

Dart: ("Don't play a prank on her. She doesn't understand jokes.")

Meru: ("I won't!" Rose has a mysterious personality. She is always cold but when it comes to a critical point, she leads us in a variety of ways.")

Dart: ("We are alive now because of Rose.")

Meru: ("I agree.")

Rose: "!!!"

[The Phantom Ship of sailors' legend appears and strikes the Queen Fury.]

Sailor: "!? What on earth is this?"

Sailor: "I can't believe this."

Puler: "What are you doing!? Get back to your stations and check on the damages!!"

Crew: "!!!"

[They salute and leave.]

Albert: "There is a heraldry. It looks like a royal ship of Mille Seseau."

Meru: "Is this, like a phantom ship!?"

Dart: "Oh boy!!"

Kayla: "Commodore!! Bad news!! It got the engine room!!"

Puler: "Kayla!! Let them hurry to fix it!!"

Kayla: "Aye aye sir!!"

Dart: "We cannot pursue Lenus like this!"

Puler: "Sometimes the ocean shows it capriciously, but I have never seen such a thing. Wait for a while, there is nothing we can do now."

Rose: (Th...this ship is...)

Haschel: "Dart!! I can't find Shana anywhere!!"

Voice: "Yeeeeeeek!!"

Dart: "Shana!?"

[He jumps onto the phantom ship.]

-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 29 - Phantom Ship PHT1 |  
-----o

Shana: "Where am I? !? Yeeeeek!!"

Dart: "Shana!! Why did you come here!?"

Shana: "I don't know. When I woke up, I was in here. But those knights protected me. They...are gone though."

Albert: "At least you are safe and sound."

Meru: "Come on! Come on!! We are here already so we might as well just take some tour here!?"

Dart: "No way!"

Shana: "I want to go too. I don't know why, but I want to know about this ship! Oh please!"

Albert: "We'll go with them. Then, it won't be a problem."

Dart: "Okay, but if anything happens, we gotta go back."

[In the corridor leading to the captain's bridge.]

Ghost: "Captain, please open here. Where are you, Captain?"

[On the topdeck...]

Dart: "!?"

Ghost Crew A: "Help me.... The bastard...the bastard is.... I don't want to ...die. H...Help."

Dart: "What!?"

Ghost Crew A: "We...cannot make it. We'll be killed by him. I don't want to die. H...Help."

Dart: "What are they talking about?"

[Dart finds a Magician Bogy, which flees after being fought.]

Dart: "It ran away!"

[In the last room...]

Dart: "We cornered it!! !?"

[Out of the opened treasure chest...]

Ghost Captain: "I have a favor to ask you. Please come to the captain's cabin."

[Dart goes to said cabin.]

Meru: "Wow! A portrait of a beautiful woman. It seems like the queen of some

country."

Dart: "It closed by itself!"

Ghost Captain: "Please, help me!"

Dart: "...!?"

Ghost Captain: "He...killed...the crew...Nanny...knights...me...and the newborn princess.... Him.... The Black...Monster."

Dart: "Wh...What!? This was done by the Black Monster too!?"

Ghost Captain: "We couldn't protect...the princess, so we couldn't finish dying. Please destroy the fear...please send the souls of the knights to rest. AAAAARRRRRRGGGGGHHHH!!!"

Dart: "It's impossible to fully die. He killed people for no reason!"

Rose: "..."

[On the topdeck...]

Ghost Knight: "We won't give you Princess Louvia!"

Dart: "Rose!!"

Ghost Knight: "We'll protect her even if it costs our lives!"

Albert: "'After counting 108 years, when the Moon That Never Sets glows red, a moon child descends upon the earth, to fill the world with holy bliss.' However, what was actually brought was the child of destruction, the Black Monster. We are witnessing a tragedy from the past."

Shana: "It's awful. Why did it have to do this?"

Dart: "The Black Monster!! How much does he have to kill before he satisfies himself!?"

Rose: "Stop it!! Sorry. What was I thinking? Let's move on. You want to know, don't you?"

[Inside the princess' room...]

Dart: "!!?"

Head of Ghost Knights: "You, Black Monster...."

Ghost Knight A: "How dare you come here, pursuing Princess Louvia."

Ghost Knight B: "But, as long as we are here with her, we are not going to give her up."

Dart: "We are not the Black Monster! We are...!"

Ghost Knight C: "How dare you monster, using human words to fool us.:"

Ghost Knight D: "Unforgivable. Even if it costs my life, I won't give up our Princess Louvia!!!"

[The ghosts are defeated.]

Ghost Knight: "AHHHHHH!!!"

Head of Ghost Knight: "Princess? Princess!"

Dart: "Shana!!!"

Shana: "It's over! There is no more Black Monster. Oh please.... Please suffer no more."

Head of Ghost Knight: "You...you are...."

Shana: "...I...!?"

Head of Ghost Knight: "Thank god. You made it. Princess Louvia...."

[The ghost knight vanishes.]

Shana: "W, Wait!! Is there still something that I don't know about?"

Dart: "!? The door is open."

[Inside, Dart looks at the baby crib.]

Ghost Nanny: "Princess Louvia, she was still young. If she wasn't a princess of Mille Seseau, this wouldn't have happened."

Shana: "Princess of Mille Seseau?"

Ghost Nanny: "Oh my, you are...? Alive.... Oh lord. It was not in vain. I have been wandering for 18 years and longing for you. I can now end everything. I can go to the place everyone is."

[The nanny sublimes.]

Shana: "Wait! What kind of relationship do I have to this person!?"

[The crib stops rocking.]

Albert: "!?"

Shana: "Yeek!!!"

Dart: "This ship is sinking!?"

[The party goes to escape.]

Kayla: "Everything is fixed and under control in the engine room now, sir!!"

Puler: "Now let's relax and wait for Dart and the others to come back."

Kayla: "Whoa!?"

Puler: "Kayla!! Get ready quick!!!"

Albert: "Everyone!! Hurry up!!!"

Meru: "Dart, Rose!! Quick quick!!!"

[Dart and Rose are stragling.]

Shana: "Dart!!!"

Rose: "Let's go!! We are the last ones!!"

[The two try to jump but almost fall in the water.]

Albert: "!!!"

Dart: "Rose!! Let go!! You gotta live!!"

Rose: [This is the same as back then!!] "No!! I won't let go!! I will never let it happen again!!"

Albert: "Rose!? Dart!! Rose!!!"

[The two fall into the waves.]

Albert: "Dart!!!"

Shana: "Commodore Puler!! Put out the life raft, quick!"

-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 30 - Village of Lidiera VLL1 |  
-----o

[Dart and Rose end up in a cave somewhere on the mainland, away from the crew.]

Rose: "Dart and Zieg, they are so much alike. Not only are they dragoons recognized by the Red-Eyed Dragon, but there is something else, something that attracts me.... After 11,000 years of time, I now feel the strength and tenderness of Dart...and even...his frailty. These tame the insanity of the Dragoon for me. Zieg.... If my hands could grab him, I wouldn't have had this bitterness."

[Flashback: 11,000 years ago in the Dragon Campaign]

Rose: "Kanzas!"

[Kanzas self-destructs on a Virage. Zieg tangos with a weird person.]

Zieg: "Not bad! I'm taking you with me!"

Zieg: "Melbu Frahma! Die!!"

Melbu Frahma: "How dare you!?"

[The large structure starts to break. A Dragoon holds it up.]

Shirley: "Belzac? your death won't be in vain!"

[Shirley destroys a Virage with an arrow.]

[Rose is alone and sees Zieg calcifying.]

Zieg: "Revel to your very core in my internal curse!!!"

Rose: "Zieg!!!"

[She grasps his hand.]

Zieg: "Let go! Save yourself!"

Rose: "Zieggggg!!!!"

[Back to the present.]

Rose: "I saw Zieg in Dart. But.... Dart is Dart. He is not Zieg. No...he is not Zieg."

[She falls asleep cradling Dart ^\_\_\_^ The next morning a dog/kid find them.]

Pete: "Pooch! What's wrong!? Oh my god!! There is somebody there!!"

[He takes them to his town.]

Pete: "Pooch, you like him, don't ya? I was surprised. Nobody would think there are people there."

Dart: "We are saved thanks to you, Pete. We have to thank Pooch too."

Pete: "By the way. Are you in love with each other? Cuz you two are traveling alone."

Dart: "Do you think so?"

Pete: "I think so. Don't they look it?"

Pete's Ma: "Yes. You make a good couple."

Rose: "Don't be silly."

Dart: "We were just looking for our friends. Actually, there are seven of us."

Pete: "Okay, but you don't need to be shy."

Pete's Ma: \*cough\* \*cough\* \*cough\*

Dart: "Are you sick?"

Pete's Ma: "It's nothing." \*cough\*

Pete: "Actualy, we should have been to the clinic in the neighboring town."

Rose: "Neighboring town?"

Pete: "It's Fueno. There is a port and they have a boat to Donau."

Dart: "You know what...? The Queen Fury might have dropped by. But why don't you take your mother to Fueno?"

Pete: "Cuz there is a monster on the way in the Undersea Cavern."

Pete's Ma: "I know we rarely have guests, but we have to let them go, Pete. Mr. Dart. I hope you can meet your friends soon."

Pete: "I hope so too! Say hi to everybody, okay!?"

[As the party tries to leave...]

Pete: "Dart!! \*Huff. Huff\*"

Dart: "What's wrong?"

Pete: "Would you please take us to Fueno! I'm afraid of the monster, but we gotta go before it's too late!"

Dart: "It's about your mother, isn't it."

Pete: "I want her to be in the hospital."

Dart: "You got it. We'll take you there."

Rose: "I can annihilate the monster for you. Did I say something wrong?"

Pete: "Thank you! I'll bring my ma!!"

[He leaves for a sec.]

Rose: "What are you looking at?"

Dart: "No, nothing."

[Soon the party leaves for the Undersea Cavern.]

Pete: "Since the Monster appeared, the water has never ebbed. But it's okay cuz Fueno is not this way."

[And it's off to Fueno!]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 31 - City of Fueno CTF1 |  
o-----o

[The bustling city opens up before the party.]

Pete: "Here we are at Fueno!! Thank you! Dart and Rose!"

Dart: "You have to get better soon and make Pete happy."

Pete: "I hope you can find your friends soon! But, are you actually in love with each other? Cuz in that cave, you...."

[Rose yanks him aside.]

Rose: !! ("You are a good boy and didn't see anything, okay!?")

Pete: ("O...okay. I didn't see it, maybe.") "It's nothing! We are going! Rose! You gotta confess to him!!"

[Rose nearly chases him off.]

Rose: "Kids.... What are you looking at?"

[The two walk down to the docked Queen Fury.]

Crew: "!!!"

Kayla: "Well..in that storm.... Even for the powerful Dart and Rose...."

Crew: "You, you are!!"

Kayla: "Mr. Dart!! Miss Rose!!"

Dart: "Kayla. I had you worried."

Kayla: "Thank god!! Both of you are safe!!"

Dart: "That was nothing."

Kayla: "Oh!! Did you see Miss Shana!? Please go see her, hurry!! She hasn't spoken even a word, since you disappeared!"

Dart: "Is she on the boat!?"

Kayla: "Everybody is in the city now!"

[Dart and company go back into the city, running into Meru.]

Meru: "!! Ouch!! Don't you have eyes!?"

Dart: "Meru!!"

Meru: "Oh? Dart!! Rose!! I knew it!! You guys are alive!! Did you see Shana? Bad boy!! Come with me quickly!! We're in the hotel!! Come quick!!"

[They go to said place.]

Dart: "Hmm? She said the hotel.... Meru.... Where is she?"

Meru: "Who am I!?"

Dart: "!?"

[The rest of the men come down.]

Meru: "You guys are slow pokes!"

Albert: "Welcome back!"

Haschel: "We were tired of waiting for you!"

Kongol: "You, die, impossible."

Dart: "Everybody!!"

Rose: "Hurry. Go see Shana."

Albert: "She is in the back room upstairs."

[Dart runs up to see her.]

Meru: "Let's leave them alone!"

Haschel: ("Rose, she has changed somehow.")

Albert: ("I agree. Indeed I got the impression that she has calmed down. In any event, it's a good thing.")



[Upstairs...]

Dart: "Shana!"

Shana: "Dart? Oh Dart!!"

Dart: "I made you worried. Are you crying?"

Shana: "It was nothing. I'm so happy that I'm crying. So.... Please don't say anything. I'm happy just like this."

Voice: ("Peeking is not a ladylike thing to do!")

Voice: ("I thought you wanted to leave them alone didnt' you!?" )

Dart: "!?"

Voice: ("It's okay for me! I gotta learn about love and romance! You guys go back! Or we're gonna be caught!")

Dart: "Kids...."

[Dart opens the door and the eavesdroppers -- Haschel, Meru, Albert -- tumble in.]

Meru: "Wow!! Please excuse us!!"

Shana: "Ha ha! It's typical of Meru!"

Dart: "Finally, you smiled."

Shana: "True. It's been a while."

[Later on...]

Dart: "And this and that.... We finally made it to Fueno."

Albert: "Not only that, you two are safe and sound. It is just a miracle that the seven of us can meet again. We have to offer our thanks to the Tiberogan God."

Dart: "We ought to return the favor to the God by taking the Moon Dagger back."

Haschel: "We have to catch Lenus then."

Meru: "May I ask you a question please!?"

Dart: "What's wrong? Why are you being so formal like that?"

Meru: "You guys were alone in the cave, weren't you? Did you guys put yourselves into...um...a romantic situation?"

Haschel: "Meru! Don't be silly. Even though you are trying to learn about love it's too rude!"

Meru: "Okay."

Haschel: "So, Dart. Did you cuddle with Rose?"

Rose: "Haschel!!"  
Dart: "Haschel!!"  
Meru: "Haschel!!"  
Albert: "Haschel!!"

Haschel: "Sorry, sorry. It slipped out."

Dart: "What do you mean 'slipped'."

Rose: "Don't worry, Shana. Dart was concerned about you the whole time.  
Anyway, about Lenus.... We should go out and ask about her in the city.  
We may find out something."

Dart: "I...I agree."

[A drunk is near the entrance.]

Drippy: "You, you don't believe me either!? I really saw it! I saw a Dragon on  
the Prison Island!"

Dart: "Dragon!? On the Prison Island?"

Drippy: "You don't know that! My ship was smashed by the Sea Dragon rumored to  
live over the Undersea Cavern! I gotta have a drink or something! But!  
You cannot go there anymore! There are lots of monsters there! My  
house was taken by those monsters! I gotta have a drink! It was a half  
year ago that the monster showed up. It's all the monster's fault that  
I'm like this now. Give my ship and house back. ZZZZZZ...."

Rose: "A half year ago.... It is the same time that Lenus joined the gang."

Dart: "Okay. Let's go to the Prison Island."

Drippy: "And, in the Prison Island?"

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 32 - Undersea Cavern UND1 |  
o-----o

Dart: "What is that noise!?"

Shana: "It's from over there!"

Albert: "There must be something over there."

Rose: "It's not just 'something'. It seems that the rumor about the Sea Dragon  
is true."

Meru: "That is the Dragon's cry."

Rose: "I can't blame you for feeling scared."

Meru: "I...I'm not scared! A dragon or two is nothing!"

Dart: "We have to look for a way to go to the Prison Island."

[They pitstop in Lidiera first. The mayor's playing cards.]

Mayor of Lidiera: "Sorry! I'm in the middle of something! Here we go! How's  
this!?"

Villager A: "Darn!! Not again!"

Mayor of Lidiera: "Well! I got a good win! Let's take a break! And what do you want?"

Dart: "We want to go to the Prison Island, but we cannot go because of the flood tide. We are wondering if there is any other way to go."

Mayor of Lidiera: "You said the Prison Island!?"

Villager A: "Are you serious?"

Villager B: "Do you want to commit suicide or something?"

Dart: "We are serious but we don't want to commit suicide."

Mayor of Lidiera: "You know it's dangerous to go there, young man!! But, why!? Why would you want to throw yourself into danger?"  
R1 -> Danger attracts me.  
R2 -> Danger is my middle name.  
R3 -> We need to see the monster.

R1: "Danger attracts me."

Mayor of Lidiera: "What!? I cannot let daredevils like you go there! I didn't close the way because it was fun! Now go!"

R2: "Danger is my middle name."

Mayor of Lidiera: "What!? I cannot let crazy people like you go there! I didn't close the way because it was fun! Get out of my sight!"

R3: "I need to see the monster."

Mayor of Lidiera: "You need to 'see' the monster!? ... .. You look serious. The appearance.... You are warriors, aren't you? I got it. I'll tell ya. But it's up to you, whether you can survive there or not! I closed the route to the Prison Island, after the monster problem arose."

Villager A: "Why didn't you close the whole cave, it's really dangerous."

Villager B: "Then we wouldn't be able to get to Fueno?"

Mayor of Lidiera: "That's why I closed only the path to the Prison Island."

Albert: "I have a question. How do you control the tide. It's puzzling me."

Mayor of Lidiera: "Oh! Don't be so puzzled! I just closed the gate to the sea when the tide was full! Then even after the tide has ebbed, the water level inside won't go down inside!"

Albert: "Oh...my. What a simple trick."

Mayor of Lidiera: "You imagined I could think of something complicated!? Haa haa haa!! Hey!! OPeN the gimmick gate for'em!!"

Villager: "I got it!!"

[A person opens a gate near Pete's house.]

Mayor of Lidiera: "Go into the cave from the right side of Pete's house. Turn the Valve and you can open the gate. Then you can go to the Prison Island!"

[Dart flips the crankvalve.]

Dart: "Now! We can go to the Prison Island!"

[After trekking through the Undersea Cavern, a scene with Lloyd/Lenus.]

Lenus: "Here is the Moon Dagger that you wanted. I didn't kill those Humans as you said. But why did you suddenly start to say such a thing?"

Lloyd: "The blood-smeared road might be the only way to lead us to the world we desire. Death gives birth to tears. And tears give birth to anger. When anger turns itself into rancor, it opens to war. It's silly that I have to repeat it, and since once is enough."

Lenus: "Well, I won't stop you if you want to do so, Lloyd. Anyway! He's called something like Dart! Aren't they the ones coming after you, Lloyd!?"

Lloyd: "It's all in my plan."

Lenus: "Hmm. 'Plan' huh? Now, let me tell you my plan. My plan is to get a hot prize from you. Tut!"

[Dart's gang arrives.]

Lenus: "Hey, you're disturbing my moment here!! You're gonna pay for this!!"

Dart: "Why...why is Lloyd here!? Is this all part of your plot!?"

Lloyd: "My will is with Emperor Diaz. Namely, everything was planned by the god."

Rose: "You are still talking about that crap!"

Albert: "You killed Lavitz, let us settle this score now!!"

Lloyd: "I have the calling to reform the world. I have no time to pay attention to little things, like Lavitz."

Dart: "Lloyd!!"

Lenus: "I can't stand it anymore!!"

Lloyd: "I am the one who torched your home to the ground. I am the one who deprived your friend of his life. And I hold the Moon Gem and the Moon Dagger in my hands! You abhor me, don't you?"

Rose: "!!!"

Lloyd: "I am heading to Mille Seseau. Pursue me, if you can survive!"

[Lloyd leaves.]

Lenus: "Easy easy! Wait a minute! Don't be so hasty! It was nice of him giving you an 'invitation'. But you gotta decline it. Because you will die now in here!!"

[Lenus transforms into the Dragoon of Water, getting defeated anyway.]

Lenus: "Lloyd, my life...is for you!!"

[She throws her chakram at Dart.]

Shana: "Dart!"

[Shana pushes Dart out of the way, escaping harm. He bats the other away.]

Lenus: "Lloyd...."

[Lenus disappears. A shiny, familiar light goes to Meru...]

Meru: "This...."

Dart: "It's Meru's Dragoon Spirit."

Rose: "Oh, I am surprised that Meru was recognized."

Meru: "Does that mean this Dragoon Spirit chose me? It means.... Am I one of the Dragoons?" [Acquired Blue Sea Dragoon Spirit] "I'm a Dragoon too!"

Rose: "'Dragoon Spirits attract each other, and Dragoons gather as the Dragon Spirit desires.... As Soa's fate leads....'"

Dart: "Are we drawn to each other like that? Is that what you are saying?"

Rose: "It's just folklore. You are going to pursue Lloyd aren't you?"

[She walks away.]

Albert: "Unfortunately, we have to go meet King Zior to tell him we couldn't bring the Moon Dagger back."

Dart: "Aren't you hurt?"

Shana: "No, thanks to you, Dart."

[Everyone's walked away.]

Meru: "Hey guys!! Don't you ignore me like that!! Heeey wait for me!!"

[They backtrack to Fueno.]

Puler: "Dart! I heard about you! You successfully defeated the monster on the Prison Island and the female bandit! What's wrong? You have a long face. We are ready to go back to Fletz in triumph."

Dart: "We couldn't get the Moon Dagger back."

Puler: "I like the ocean. Let yourself flow in the waves and winds. The problems of this world become not a problem at all. Here is an idea, Dart. Why don't you come with me on the ocean? Dart, you would make a

good sailor, or even a great man of the sea!"

R1 -> A man of the sea, not bad.

R2 -> I can't.

R1: "A man of the sea, not bad."

Shana: "What are you talking about! We have to pursue Lloyd now!"

Dart: "Yeah. We have something we have to take care of."

Puler: "I understand, but it's a shame. However, I'm moved that you considered being a man of the sea. It's small, but it's my farewell gift to you! Take this! [Acquired 100G]"

R2: "I can't. I still have something to take care of."

Puler: "I understand. It's a shame, though."

Puler: "Dart, as soon as you are ready, just come aboard. Meet you on the boat! Be ready for departure!!"

Kayla: "Are you ready?"

R1 -> Not yet.

R2 -> Yes.

R1: "Not yet."

Kayla: "Please hurry up. Commodore Puler is losing his patience."

R2: "Yes."

Kayla: "Casting off! Getting ready to cast off!!"

[Back to Donau...]

o-----o  
| Ch. 2 - 33 - Twin Castle at Fletz IV TCF4 |  
o-----o

[Everyone heads towards the castle square.]

Man: "Princess Emille is here!!"

Albert: "Let's go!"

Man: "Her graceful steps...."

Woman: "Her dainty movement of the hands...."

Man: "Her gracious eyes...."

Woman: "She must be.... She is our Princess Emille!!"

Crowd: "Princess Emille is back!"

Emille: "I have returned after a half year of sleep. My father, King Zior, wouldn't say it, but I heard that the evildoings of the sinner who feigned to be me has harmed our people in Tiberoa. I can say it is my fault. Because people were wounded by trusting someone they thought was me. I am determined to make atonements for this, even if it takes

forever."

Crowd: "It wasn't your fault Your Majesty!! Please do not blame yourself Your Highness!! Your returning only makes us happy!!"

Emille: "I owe you a debt of gratitude. I love this country. I love you people. Let us make this country continue to be a wonderful country!"

Pregnant Mother: "I have a favor to ask you, Princess Emille. May I ask you to name my baby, my soon-to-be-born baby, Your Highness?"

Emille: "It would be my pleasure. How about Eyie for a girl and Al for a boy? They have the sound of great energy and strength."

Pregnant Mother: "They are beautiful names!! I thank you very much Your Highness!!"

Crowd: "God bless Princess Emille!! God Bless Tiberoa Kingdom!! All the best for the kingdom and us!!"

[After the crowd disperses...]

Albert: "Oh Princess Emille.... How beautiful she is...."

Dart: "Albert?"

Albert: "Just like I imagined.... Oh, thank you lord for leading me to the country of Princess Emille...."

Dart: "Is something wrong?"

Albert: "Oh.... Oh. Oh, no? Where is Princess Emille?"

Dart: "You can meet her again in the castle."

[In the Twin Castle...]

Tiberoan Knight: "We have been waiting for you, sir!! Please proceed to the Chamber of the Sun!!"

[The party goes for an audience.]

King Zior: "Heroes! Forget about formality! You are the special guests of Tiberoa! Welcome back!"

Emille: "I'm glad you are safe and sound..."

Lisa: "My sister is now acting as if nothing happened, but until you came back, King Albert, she had lost her appetite completely."

King Zior: "It's not only Emille. We were longing for all of you to come back. Well done."

Dart: "But... The Moon Dagger is still in their hands..."

King Zior: "Stop it! You people brought justice upon the evil bandits!! You defeated the Sea Dragon that infested Illisa Bay!! It was you, young people, who brought peace and happiness to Tiberoa and brought smiles back to our people!!"

Albert: "However, the Moon Dagger has to be passed on to Princess Emille..."

King Zior: "The Moon Dagger is a mere royal tradition. Tradition alone doesn't put smiles on our people's faces. That is all the Moon Dagger can be. King Albert. We are satisfied with the way things turned out."

Emille: "Instead of the Moon Dagger, we found something else to hand down. That is...the heroic story of you."

Lisa: "It will be passed down through the ages from person to person: 'The seven stars arose from the East to save the country of the king who lives in the Chamber of the Sun.'..."

Dart: "It was my pleasure, Your Majesty."

King Zior: "That's enough for formality!! We are having a banquet for you! Please enjoy yourself!!"

Meru: "Is a 'Banquet' a party?!!"

King Zior: "Plainly speaking yes, it is!!"

Meru: "Cool!! It's a party!! A party for us!!"

Shana: "Oh Meru! Behave and be quiet!"

King Zior: "Haa Haa Haa! She is cheerful and excited!!"

Emille: "We still have time before the party. Please feel free to relax."

King Zior: "Let us prepare for the banquet!!"

[Back in the lobby...]

Dart: "It seems we can relax for the first time in a long time, tonight."

Albert: "I think so too... We have to leave here tomorrow. It is a good chance to relax."

Shana: "Mille Seseau... The country where Dart was born... We'll be busy again..."

Meru: "I'll be walking around till the party starts!"

[Everyone starts to do their own thing.]

Dart: "Hey... Where are you going!?"

Haschel: "I have an errand to do."

Rose: "Are you going too, Rose?"

Albert: "Let me go too. You have to appreciate what everyone did."

Shana: "Why don't we go out too?"

[Shana and Dart talk on the between-towers bridge.]

Shana: "I love you, Dart. Since I was little... It never changed, even when you went on your journey, Dart. Actually, I started to love you even



more... Because while you were gone, I was thinking about you every single day..."

Dart: "Shana..."

Shana: "So, I don't mind being your baby sister. Because I can be with you everyday... That's just how I think."

Dart: "I... I...don't think of you as my baby sister, Shana. I..."

Shana: "Let's continue this after our journey is over...all right?"

[Fester interrupts the almost-kiss (grr!)]

Fester: "Dart! Welcome back! What's wrong? You have such a sour face."

Dart: "You, you think so?"

Fester: "Anyway! You are famous in the city! The hero who defeated the dragon that descended down on Tiberoa!"

Dart: "If you say so... It still doesn't feel like it's real."

Fester: "It's your modest attitude! You are our times' latest hero!"

Dart: "Um..."

Fester: "By the way, the party is starting! Get rid of your sour face. And be happy! See you later."

[He leaves and this time Libria interrupts an almost-kiss.]

Libria: "Oh!? Mr. Dart! Miss Shana! Why are you here!?"

Dart: "We are waiting for the party to start..."

Libria: "It's starting soon! Please get everyone or I cannot prepare the dresses! I'll see you later!"

[She leaves.]

Shana: "I am going to look for everybody."

Dart: "Wait!"

[Dart finds Albert in Emille's room]

Albert: "Do you know about the Legend of the Mermaid?"

Emille: "No.... Please tell me about it."

Albert: "The king of some country is gazing out over the waves of the sea and thinking his life is hollow, just like the vanishing bubbles. Everything looked like that because the king didn't know true love. Under the waves, a mermaid was thinking the same thing while gazing at the clouds in the sky."

Emille: "Oh my... And what happened to the two of them?"

Albert: "Would you like to know? This is a secret story handed down only

within the Serdio royal family, so...I cannot tell you anymore. Oh...  
I'm sorry I cannot go on."

Emille: "Oh! You are teasing me!" \*Chuckle\*... "But I am having a fabulous  
time. I didn't notice the passing of time when I'm talking with you."

[Dart enters.]

Dart: "I knew it, you are here...."

Albert: "Is something wrong?"

Dart: "The party is starting soon. So I am calling everybody down."

Albert: "It's already that time. Unfortunately, I have to leave you."

Emille: "When can we meet again?"

Albert: "When the stars fill the sky...."

Dart: "You can simply say 'tonight'."

Emille: "At the party...."

[In the kitchen...]

Meru: "Just a peek is fine! I wanna see the party food!"

Haschel: "We are not going to eat now. We just want to sample the food..."

Maid: "That is eating! Come on! Please get out! You are delaying the  
preparation!"

[Both get booted outta the kitchen.]

Maid: "Mr. Dart! Please stop them!"

Haschel: "Wars never choose their time. You have to eat whenever you can. That  
is a basic understanding for a warrior!"

Meru: "You wanna eat too, don't ya Dart?"

R1 -> Me too!

R2 -> The party is starting soon.

R1: "Me too!"

Shana: "Stop it! You are not a kid anymore! You too Haschel! The  
party is starting soon. Behave yourself!"

Meru: "Is that true?"

Haschel: "Why didn't you say so!"

Dart: "Y, Yes! I'm here to tell you that!"

Meru: "C'mon. Let's go!"

R2: "The party is starting soon. You can eat as much as you want then,  
right?"

Meru: "Is that true?"

Haschel: "Why didn't you say so!"

Dart: "I'm here to tell you that."

Meru: "C'mon. Let's go!"

[Rose is in the guest bedroom.]

Rose: [I am...a hero... He would laugh at me...] \*Chuckle\*... [...!? I... laughed now... ...I did laugh... Since I have started to wear this choker... I have not laughed...for years...] \*Chuckle\*... [It was worth the wait...]

Dart: "Oh, you are here. I'm here to tell you that the party is starting."

Rose: "It'll be a fun party."

[Kongol is in the knights' training area using his axe.]

Kongol: "Kongol has friends. Friends of different species."

Dart: "Not bad. Whoa!!"

Kongol: "Don't do that."

Dart: "That's what I should say!"

Kongol: "Did you hear Kongol speaking?"

Dart: "Not really... By the way, the party is starting."

[All allies are collected!]

Dart: "Everybody's here. By the way, she was saying something about dresses, but where should we go...? We have to ask Libria about it...."

[Libria's near the training center.]

Libria: "It seems everyone is here. Miss Shana, Miss Rose, and Miss Meru, please come this way... You have to change into the dresses."

Shana: "Dresses? You are talking about us?"

Libria: "Yes I am. Princess Emille and Princess Lisa insist."

Dart: "Good for you."

Meru: "No thanks."

Dart: "It's not like you."

Meru: "Cuz, I'm a dancer. I can't dance well in those dresses."

Rose: "No thanks for me either. I feel naked without my sword."

Libria: "Please wait in the living room. I will come and take you there later."

[Everyone lounges in the guest quarters for awhile.]

Libria: "Everything is ready. Please proceed to the Chamber of the Sun."

[In said chamber...]

King Zior: "This is a banquet to honor the seven heroes who saved Tiberoa!!  
Please enjoy yourselves to the utmost!!"

[Haschel stands alone.]

Woman in Red Dress: "Mr. Dart!"

Woman in Blue Dress: "Wait for us!"

Woman in Red Dress: "You must be Mr. Dart! I am dying to hear your story..."

Woman in Blue Dress: "Oh, excuse me, but monopolizing him is not fair. Please  
let me hear your story too."

Woman in Red Dress: "I would like to know more about you."

Woman in Blue Dress: "Oh my! Don't be so fresh with him! I talked to him  
first! Oh... You must be Mr. Haschel..."

Haschel: "I'll take care of things here. Why don't you go enjoy yourself  
with Shana. At least tonight, you have to make good use of the time  
the two of you are together."

Dart: "Thank you."

[Kongol stands alone.]

Kongol: "What did you do to Shana?"

Dart: "Do...? I didn't do anything."

Kongol: "No Shana here."

Dart: "No!?"

Kongol: "Kongol tall. Kongol doesn't see from here."

Dart: "Where is she...?"

[Meru is dancing all around.]

Dart: "Are you enjoying yourself?"

Meru: "Yup! It's fun! Are you gonna dance too!?"

R1 -> I'll try.

R2 -> No thanks.

R1: "I'll try."

Meru: "Right on!"

[They start dancing together.]

Meru: "Where is Shana?"

Dart: "I don't know."

Meru: "Go look for her. She should be waiting for ya. Come on! Go!"

R2: "No thanks."

Meru: "Don't say that! You gotta totally enjoy yourself tonight!!"

Meru: "Where is Shana?"

Dart: "I don't know."

Meru: "Go look for her. She should be waiting for ya. Come on! Go!"

[Albert is talking with Emille.]

Albert: "I have to go to Mille Seseau with Dart."

Emille: "I'll wait for you... I'll wait for you forever."

King Zior: "Emille! Well said! The future of Serdio and Tiberoa is shining like the sun!"

Albert: "I believe love is the only entity that never changes over time."

Emille: "And distance makes the love grow deeper."

King Zior: "I cannot watch this anymore! What's wrong...you have a long face?"

Albert: "...If you are looking for Shana, she is not here."

[After talking to everyone:]

Libria: "Mr. Dart! Miss Rose needs you. This way..."

[On the balcony...]

Dart: "Rose...?"

Rose: "Dart... Why are you procrastinating like that? Do you want her to catch a cold or something? Making her wait all night like that? She's over there."

[Shana is all dressed up nearby.]

Dart: "You look beautiful..."

Shana: "Thank you. But...it's all thanks to this dress."

Dart: "That's not true."

Shana: "Look! A falling star! I wonder if my wish will come true?"

Dart: "It will. Because... I wished the same thing..."

[They kiss and the disc ends.]

[The Queen Fury docks in Mille Seseau's seaside town.]

Rose: "There is a smell of blood around this place. But.... It's not bad at all."

Meru: "It's been a long time!"

Haschel: "Have you been here?"

Meru: "Umm...y, yeah. Well, I'm very popular, that's why!"

Kongol: "Kongol crossed sea first time."

Albert: "Furni the Water City. This port is the front door to Mille Seseau. Anyway, I wonder why Lloyd revealed his destination to us?"

Dart: "I still don't know. Whatever he wants, this will be the end of it."

Shana: "I agree. For the sake of the victims so far. It's not only that. In order to prevent there being new victims, we have to stop Lloyd."

[In town a bunch of hunters are gathered.]

Resident Knight Harris: "This seems to be all of us! Now! I'll explain the strategy! We hae to overcome the white wolf called Kamuy that lives in the Evergreen Forest between this village and Deningrad!"

Hunter: "Did you call us just for that!?"

Resident Knight Harris: "Not only that. A boy from the village, Teo, disappeared in the Evergreen Forest! The strategy is simple! All of us will beat the bushes all over the Evergreen Forest! I promise a five times larger prize for the one of you who defeats Kamuy!! I promise the same for the one who saves Teo!"

Bulgus: "It's gonna be me!"

Hunter: "I'm itching to do it!!"

Bulgus: "Who are you? I've never seen you before. You look like you have a chance, but I'm getting the prize. Don't ever disturb me!"

Dart: "..."

Bulgus: "Are you scared out of your wits and cannot talk!?"

Resident Knight Harris: "Cut it out! We have to cooperate or we cannot overcome Kamuy!"

Bulgus: "Humph! I'll let you know when we will start! Until then, you have some free time! You are dismissed!"

[Down in the inn...]

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "I'll be right with you. Here is the license for the boat. The Mayor gave us an order to rent the boat to warriors for free."

Dart: "Warriors?"

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "Well? You are the warriors who came to overcome the wolf, aren't you?"

R1 ->

R2 ->

R1: "No, we are not. We are just travelers. We've just arrived from Tiberoa today."

R2: "Yes, we are."

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "You look fishy though.  
I cannot give it to you  
because something is fishy  
about you."

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "From Tiberoa? With that huge boat?"

Dart: "Yes, it is the Queen Fury."

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "Well, wait a minute. One, two, three...seven!! Could you be the famous Dart and companions who conquered the Sea Dragon in Illisa Bay?"

Dart: "I guess the story has traveled all the way here."

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "Hon! Let the Mayor know about this!! He'll be happy to hear about this! Here it is! The License for the boat! Take it!" [Acquired License for the Boat]

Dart: "Thank you."

Man at the Rent-a-Boat: "I have to thank you! Thanks to you, we can go fishing and go to Tiberoa! If you need anything, just drop by! We have accommodations too! I'll give you a good price!"

[The 'heroes' go to meet the mayor.]

Mayor of Furni: "Are they coming yet? The heroes from Tiberoa. Oh! I couldn't sit still. I was just pacing around waiting for you! The story of your heroic deeds in Tiberoa has reached us here in Furni! It is wonderful what you did! And now I would like you to listen to my story!"

Dart: "P, please wait. I don't know what you are talking about."

Mayor of Furni: "I would like to talk briefly about the sad situation in this village. Would you please listen to me?"

R1 -> Sorry, we have no time.

R2 -> Okay.

R1: "Sorry, we have no time."

Mayor of Furni: "Oh.... Well, I see."

Shana: [to little girl] "What's wrong?"

Mayor of Furni: "This is...my daughter Fa. Since that horrible incident, she hasn't opened her mouth."

Shana: "Is the story...about the incident?"

Dart: "I undertsand. Tell us."

R2: "Okay."

Mayor of Furni: "This is...my daughter Fa."

Mayor of Furni: "A few days ago, my daughter was attacked by a wolf. Fortunately, the injury was not bad, however, since then, she hasn't talked at all. Probably from the shock of the incident."

Shana: "Poor thing."

Mayor of Furni: "The wolf is becoming more savage every day. Now, he has been joined by monsters from the Evergreen Forest, and they attack people!"

Albert: "I see. The warriors outside are the group headed for battle. Indeed, if we finish off the wolf, your daughter may become better."

Mayor of Furni: "But it is more complicated than that. The wolf called Kamuy that attacked Fa was kept by a boy of this village, until recently. And the boy who kept Kamuy named Teo has disappeared! On the night Fa was injured, Teo disappeared from his home. Probably he feels responsible and ran away. Teo has been Fa's friend since they were little. They are best friends."

Rose: "And.... You awnt us to cooperate with you on your mission."

Mayor of Furni: "Yes. Of course I cannot force you. Now we have a lot of warriors. Maybe they are enough. Oh.... Sorry about this. I have made you listen for such a long time without thinking about you at all. Well, as my apology, won't you stay at my house for the night? It will be an honor to entertain heroes!"

Dart: "Well...." [he ducks by Fa] "Do you like Shana? For tonight only. Thank you."

Mayor of Furni: "I am glad! Fa is happy too! She has been lonely since her mother passed away. Now, let me see. When you are ready to stay, come back. I will prepare dinner with Fa. Are you ready to stay here?"

R1 -> Not yet.

R2 -> Yes we are.

R1: "Not yet."

Mayor of Furni: "I'll wait for you then."

R2: "Yes we are."

Mayor of Furni: "Now, let's have dinner!"

[Dinner...is eaten. Fa goes to Shana.]



Shana: "Yes dear? Are you sleepy? You want to go to bed together?"

Haschel: "Probably she wants warmth."

Shana: "Let's go to to bed together."

[The two girls retire for the night.]

Haschel: "!! This lullaby...."

[Flashback: Home of Haschel 27 years ago. Claire hums to herself.]

Claire: "Isn't it a lovely tune? This tune is a lullaby that I am dedicating to my future baby."

Haschel: "That might be better for her than mastering the martial arts."

[Back to present-day Furni.]

Shana: (She is sleeping now.) "Isn't it a sweet tune? I learned this from Dart."

Haschel: "Dart knew this tune?"

Shana: "He said that his late mother sang it to him. It's a special lullaby for Dart."

Haschel: (!! I see. It was not a coincidence for me to be here.) "I'm going to get some air."

Albert: "It reminds me that Dart has been outside on the roof forever. Why don't you join him?"

[Out on the roof, Meru tails Shana and eavesdrops.]

Dart: "It's a tune from my memory."

Shana: "Do you remember? When you first came to Seles. I was little and you used to sing this song to me."

Dart: "I remember that. Back then I used to take care of you, as if you were my baby sister, Shana."

Shana: \*Chuckle\* "Like a 'baby sister'. But many things have changed since then. You and I too, Dart."

Dart: "Yeah. You and I too, Shana."

Shana: \*Chuckle\* "Yes we have."

Meru: (Childhood friend, hmm. I wonder how my childhood friend is doing.)

Dart: "The Moon That Never Sets. I hadn't noticed, but the Moon has been involving itself in our journey."

[Light comes out of Shana.]

Shana: "My...my head hurts!"

Dart: "Shana!?"

Meru: "What's wrong!?"

Dart: "Are you all right!!"

Shana: "Ahh...."

[Back inside the house...]

Shana: "I'm fine now. I can leave anytime."

Mayor of Furni: "Are you really okay!? You can stay here forever if you like!"

Shana: "Thank you very much. But I really have to go. I'll see you soon. Let's go. We have to find Lloyd soon or it will be too late."

Dart: "I'm with ya."

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 35 - Evergreen Forest EVG1 |  
o-----o

[After walking awhile, Dart sees a kid.]

Dart: "He, Hey!"

[The kid flees. Some hunters flee down the road, too.]

Hunter: "He, Help!!"

[A gigantic wolf appears.]

Dart: "This is Kamuy!?"

Resident Knight Harris: "Everybody surround it!! Finally I found it!"

Bulgus: "I'll get him and I'll get the five times larger prize!! Let me kill it!!"

Voice: "Stop it!!"

[The kid from before appears.]

Resident Knight Harris: "Teo!! You are all right!!"

Teo: "Everybody listen! It was not Kamuy's fault! It was a different monster that attacked Fa!"

Resident Knight Harris: "Teo!! Leave Kamuy!!"

Teo: "No way!! Cuz Kamuy protected Fa! So I'll protect Kamuy this time!! Please!! Don't kill Kamuy!!"

Resident Knight Harris: "Teo! It's no longer the Kamuy you knew! Many other people were attacked by it! Guys! Let's grab Teo first!"

Teo: "Stop it!!"

[Kamuy goes on a rampage to get Teo to safety.]

Hunter: "Gwaah!"

Hunter: "Whoa!!"

Bulgus: "Yaaa!!"

[Kamuy escapes w/ Teo]

Resident Knight Harris: "Teo!! Pursue them!!"

Shana: "The wolf called Kamuy. They say it used to be Teo's. I wonder why it became savage?"

Dart: "I don't know. The only thing we know is that the wolf is a menace in the forest now."

[On a different path, Rose stops.]

Dart: "What's up?"

Rose: "Please go ahead. I remember I have some important errand to do."

[She slides down a path away from the party.]

Dart: "Hey, wait!"

Rose: "I'll catch up with you soon. Look for Lloyd in the meantime."

Haschel: "She is mysterious, as always."

Shana: "Meru?"

Meru: "Hee hee.... I now remember I have an errand too."

Dart: "You're not going to tell us the reason either, Meru?"

Meru: "I'm just visiting my parents, that's all!"

Haschel: "That's all? You should've said so. I will miss you, Meru."

Meru: "I'll be back soon! See ya!"

[Meru leaves also.]

Dart: "It's typical of Meru. Let's move on."

[They finally find Kamuy. It howls furiously.]

Dart: "!!"

R1 -> [Maybe we should retreat.]

R2 -> [Maybe we should advance.]

R1: [Dart retreats.]

R2: [Maybe we should advance.]

[Dart approaches.]

Teo: "!! Go home! Kamuy's not bad! Go home!"

Shana: "We met Fa. Fa is worried about you."

Teo: "Fa is...?"

Dart: "It's true. Fa doesn't talk anymore since you disappeared, Teo. It is because she really cares about you."

Teo: "Fa cares that much about me?"

Shana: "Fa needs you."

Teo: "But.... What about Kamuy? He's gonna be killed if I don't protect him!"

Voice: "That's right!!"

[Bulgus appears.]

Bulgus: "You pretended to not be interested! But you came back for the prize, right! But I won't let you! I'll finish the beast!"

Resident Knight Harris: "Teo! Come here! It's too late for Kamuy!"

Teo: "Don't come here!"

[Kamuy stomps on Bulgus and prepares to rip him apart.]

Bulgus: "He, Help!!"

Shana: "Dart! We have to let Kamuy, stop!"

[Bulgus gets thrown out of the screen.]

Bulgus: "Arrrrghhh!"

Teo: "Stooooop it!!"

[The party defeats Kamuy.]

Teo: "Kamuy! Don't die!!"

Shana: "I, I may be contradicting myself. But, I cannot leave this like that. White Silver Dragon.... Please save...Kamuy!!"

Teo: "Kamuy?"

Resident Knight Harris: "Kamuy is becoming himself again."

[Shana's DS recovers the wolf...it's really small again.]

Teo: "Kamuy!!"

Shana: "I'm glad."

Albert: "The White Silver Dragon healed the savage soul that changed Kamuy."

Dart: "Teo. Go back to Fa and show her you are fine. Kamuy can go back with him can't he?"

Resident Knight Harris: "Hmm, it seems he's not going to harm people anymore."

Fine. If anything happens, I'll take responsibility.  
It will be the best for Teo and Fa. Teo, let's go  
home! Everybody's worried about you!"

Teo: "Okay! Thank you! Miss!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 36 - Crystal Palace at Deningrad DNG1 |  
o-----o

[At the Deningrad church, a priest speaks to a group of people.]

Bishop Dille: "It is said taht the Divine Tree that lives in our hearts and  
the Last Fruit has been protected from evil by the Signets  
created by the ancient Winglies. The legend goes, 'When the  
Signet is broken, the end of the world approaches.' Just like  
the Last Fruit, we Humans are one of the fruits given life by  
the Divine Tree. For the 'End of the World' to be a mere  
legend, we must remove evil from our hearts and live in honesty.  
It is our mission as children of the Divine Tree."

[The crowd leaves. Dart's team approaches.]

Dart: "A Divine Tree, I've never heard of it."

Albert: "We still don't know what the objectives are for Lloyd. Any  
information could be helpful."

Bishop Dille: "Oh, you must be travelers. Welcome to Deningrad. My name is  
Bishop Dille. I serve the Divine Tree."

Dart: "I'm Dart. This drawing is what you were talking about?"

Bishop Dille: "Yes, it is. The Divine Tree. But this is what we imagine.  
Nobody has seen the real tree. Nonetheless, we believe in the  
Divine Tree. It is the source of life in harmony. Would you like  
to know more about the Divine Tree?"

R1 -> No thank you.

R2 -> Yes please.

R1: "No thank you."

Albert: "Dart! Why did you say that!?! Knowledge about the  
Divine Tree may lead us down the right road! Oh,  
Dart. You are pathetic. Knowledge reveals itself  
only to those who desire it."

Haschel: ("He just wants to know things, doesn't he?")

Shana: ("But just listening to a story won't harm us, will  
it?")

Dart: ("I was concerned about Lloyd, but if you insist, we  
can listen to him.")

Albert: "Therefore! Let's listen to the story of the Bishop!  
All right!?"

Dart: "I take it back. Please tell us."

R2: "Yes please."

Bishop Dille: "The Divine Tree is the Tree of Life. All life comes from this Divine Tree. In the beginning, nothingness filled the world. Then, The Creator Soa descended from the sky. He and his followers created the world. In the end, Soa sowed a seed on the earth. The seed soon grew to be a great tree. The great tree bore 108 fruits and various lifeforms arose from the ripened fruits. Thus, 108 forms of life created to fill the world. The Divine Tree completed its rule, but the story says it is still protected by the Signet of Soa. It is like this, the world was established with a fate determined by Soa."

Dart: "God's tree, sown by Soa, is the Divine Tree."

Bishop Dille: "If you would like to find out more about this, you can go to the National Library."

Albert: "Is that the Mille Seseau National Library!! I can step into the treasury of knowledge. I wonder if I am capable of receiving all this incredible luck and still remain calm. No! I cannot! The treasure of knowledge is shining and calling me!"

Dart: "Al, Albert? Are you okay?"

Albert: "Let's go!"

[Down the aisle...]

Librarian Ute: "Who are you people? Do you realize that you are talking to Librarian Ute?"

Dart: "No. Sorry."

Librarian Ute: "So what do you want? Have you interrupted my ceremony for no reason?"

Haschel: "I don't like stubborn old guys because I want to be an adorable old guy."

Librarian Ute: "Did you say something?"

Albert: "Please wait. we were told by Bishop Dille that there is a wonderful library here."

Librarian Ute: "If you want, you can just go to the library. ... Oh, wait. I locked the door when I left!"

Albert: "So, could you open the door? I would love the opportunity to touch such treasures of intelligence!"

Librarian Ute: "All right. Stop looking at me like that!"

Albert: "I appreciate it!"

Librarian Ute: "I'll let you in now!"

Haschel: "He is such a haughty old guy."

Dart: "Don't say that. We have to do what we can do until Lloyd shows up."

Albert: "That's true. He used a Dragon and a Dragoon in Serdio, and in Tiberoa, he obtained the cooperation of a Wingly. We don't know what he will do here."

[At the massive library...]

Albert: "This is incredible!!"

Librarian Ute: "This is the knowledge source of Endiness! Go look for anything you want!"

Shana: "The entire wall is filled with books. Maybe we can find out something about Virages and the Moon That Never Sets."

Haschel: "Doesn't looking at these things all the time have an affect on you?"

Librarian Ute: "It made me wise!"

Kongol: "Kongol feel dizzy. Gigantos lose to books."

Albert: "Here is something about Dragons! It also talks about Dragoons too!"

Dart: "We can say that the Serdian War was started from the Dragoon Spirit that was brought by Lloyd."

Shana: "Let's split up and look."

Dart: "Let's just do it."

Haschel: "I guess I have to use my brain for the first time in a long time."

Kongol: "Can Kongol read human words?"

Shana: "If Rose were here, she would tell us a lot."

Dart: "They will be back when they finish with their errands. We have to do what we can do now."

[Dart and his crew eventually talk amongst themselves for awhile.]

Librarian Ute: "Hmm. Hmm!! It led to the Dragon Campaign! Hmm. Hmm!! What do you need?"

Haschel: "Are you acting superior again?"

Librarian Ute: "Of course. I am superior."

Haschel: "I prefer being a hit with girls over feeling superior."

Librarian Ute: "I don't care about those things! It seems you are interested in the Dragon Campaign. Winglies, Divine Moon Objects, Dragons and Dragoons. These all had something to do with the Dragon Campaign."

Dart: "Then Lloyd has something to do with the Dragon Campaign?"

Librarian Ute: "The Dragon Campaign is my specialty. Maybe I can be of assistance."

Dart: "Tell me."

Albert: "We only know fragments."

Librarian Ute: "I see. This is the legend of the Dragon Campaign that I know.... There were 7 tribal warriors in the legend of the Dragon Campaign, dragoons reputed to be the incarnations of Dragons. With Dragons at their side, the dragoons fought boldly. However, in the age when the legend was reality, the Winglies dominated all, even the gods. The gods answered to dictator Melbu Frahma's prayers and granted him ultimate power; but, the power was abused. The earth of Saint Imperial Gloriano was scorched by the gods' fire and became ashen. The anger and sadness of the people was the fuel for the dragoons' cause. Then at last, they freed the gods. Without the gods' power, the Winglies perished and our age, the Human Age, began. Thereafter, the gods floated in the sky. For 11,000 years, they have been looking over the world as the Moon That Never Sets. That is the story. Did you find out something related to Lloyd? Oh well, that's unfortunate. You are already here so you might as well check the Reference Room upstairs."

Dart: "Are there more books?"

Librarian Ute: "No. It contains the historical material of Mille Seseau. For other people, it may seem to be mere trash; however, for our country, they are all historical objects. This is something left by the Black Monster that brought an inferno down on this country."

Dart: "The Black Monster!?"

Librarian Ute: "It has already been 18 years. It is surprising a young man like you knows about it."

Dart: "I was born in Neet!"

Librarian Ute: "God! Are you a survivor from the village!?"

[Upstairs, by some relics...]

Librarian Ute: "This is the stained glass of the church in Neet. Do you remember seeing this?"

Dart: "Yes. Faintly, but I do remember."

Librarian Ute: "It was really a monster. These are the only things that survived the black flame."

Dart: "Do you know anything about what happened to Neet back then? Any survivors or...."

Librarian Ute: "I know only one."

Dart: "Who is that!?"

Librarian Ute: "The Second Sacred Sister of Mille Seseau, Sister Luanna. It seems you don't know her. However I can tell you a little about the Black Monster. There is a legend about the Black Monster



and the Moon Child. Would you like to hear it?"

R1 -> No thanks.

R2 -> Yes please.

R1: "No thanks."

Librarian Ute: "When you are ready, come to me. I'll wait for you here."

R2: "Yes please."

Librarian Ute: "It is ironic, but.... The people who visit the church in Neet pray for their own happiness by looking at this stained glass which shows the legend of the Black Monster and the Moon Child. Why did the gods created him? The Black Monster. He appears in various legends, as a demon who rebels against and devours the gods, an evil plague that rejects peace in the world, the god that is the Moon That Never Sets. The Moon That Never Sets glows red every 108 years. It is a sign that a herald will be sent to earth, a herald is known to us as the Moon Child. The legend says the Moon Child revives the gods on earth and purifies the world. The Black Monster abhors, hates, and despises it, and kills the Moon Child. This sad karma is endless. This god stays forever in the sky, and the world is in never-ending chaos."

[Meanwhile, in the ruins of Neet, Rose walks around.]

Rose: "Nothing has changed." (Am I...hesitating?) "It's silly."

????: "Mother.... I am back."

[A person is at a shrine.]

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Mother, it's been a while. Since the tragic day, I lost my sight. I am able to see today, thanks to the love of many people like Setie here. May the Divine Tree bless all the victims of the tragedy. Who is it?"

Rose: "I didn't mean to surprise you."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "You are?"

Rose: "Just a traveler. Please don't be alarmed."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "There are people of Neet, and my mother, sleeping here."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Are you here to visit the grave too?"

Rose: "I guess so."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Then you know about Neet!?"

[Flashback: Neet 18 years ago. A guard is being attacked by the BM.]

Black Monster: "Where is Princess Louvia?"

Knight of Mille Seseau: "I will never tell you! UUURRRGGGHH!!"

[In a house somewhere...]

Luanna: "I...I can't see. Mom, I'm scared."

Luanna's Mother: "Don't come!!"

Black Monster: "Where is Princess Louvia? Where did you hide the Moon Child?"

Luanna's Mother: "We don't know!! What kind of spitefulness do you have toward our village!?"

Black Monster: "You want to die with your daughter?"

Second Sacred Sister: "Mom, I'm scared."

Luanna's Mother: "Princess Louvia left for the sea. This must be enough to satisfy you! Now leave this village!"

Black Monster: "The chance to eliminate the Moon Child comes only once every 108 years. It's the time of birth when the moon glows a blood color. The newly born Moon Child has a magic power. That magic power changes everyone around into an evangelist for the god, a servant to help prepare for the descending of the god."

Luanna's Mother: "Ah!"

Black Monster: "My objectives will not be satisfied until I kill every single person who was present as the Moon Child passed through."

[The BM leaves.]

Luanna: "Mom...? Answer me...? It's hot!! It's burning. Mom.... Mom...."

[Back to the present time.]

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "It was a miracle that I survived."

Rose: "I see. Then you were blinded back then?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Yes. However, the god imparted me with something else."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Sister Luanna can see people's souls! But, she can feel their pain too. Because of this, Sister Luanna has suffered."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Now I can appreciate this power that I have. Because, it allows me to heal the pain in people's hearts. If you need to heal the pain in your heart, please tell me. I can help you."

Rose: "That's not necessary. By the way, are you done?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Yes. I will go back to Deningrad soon."

Rose: "May I join you? Even if you are with knights, the forest is filled with dangerous monsters. I can protect you from them."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "I see. Then I'll ask you to come with us."

[They leave. Flash forward: Home of Meru.]

Meru: "It's been a long time! I wonder if everybody is doin' all right? I wonder if they feel lonely without me? Wow!"

[A fireball almost hits her.]

Meru: "Hey watch out!"

????: "Who is this coming through the boundary!?"

Meru: "Wh, who are you, not knowin' me!?"

????: "?? Meru? Is that you, Meru!?"

Meru: "Guaraha!? Long time no see! You look great!"

Guaraha: "Do you think I am really 'great'? How could you leave without telling me! Where have you been!?"

Meru: "He.... Hey! I came all the way back here! You don't need to yell at me! Aren't you happy to see me!?"

Guaraha: "I am very happy to see you!! But leaving through the forest is our taboo! You left the forest, so I don't know if everybody else in the forest will forgive you, Meru."

Meru: "Who cares about taboos!? Everybody in this forest!? And the Humans outside!? Both of us are living in the same world. How come we have to draw a line and lock ourselves in like this!?"

Guaraha: "That's what I wanna know. I have been living in this forest forever. I wish I knew."

Meru: "I'm gonna ask the Ancestor! I won't ask you anymore!"

[Meru travels into town.]

Meru: "I'm home! Oops, it seems I'm not that welcome."

Wingly A: "It's Meru."

Wingly B: "Meru is back!"

Meru: "This is my home! I can come home at any time!"

Wingly A: "Such selfishness is not tolerated!"

Wingly B: "There is no place to come home to, Meru!"

Meru: "But...."

????: "That's true!!"

[Two Winglies descend.]

Younger Bardel: "You are the black sheep of the proud Winglies! How dare you shamelessly come back!"

Older Bardel: "I thought you were satisfied with your decadent human life,

weren't you?"

Meru: "Bardel?" What are you talking about?"

Older Bardel: "Go back to the Humans."

Younger Bardel: "And wait there, for the moment we destroy the Humans!"

????: "Stop it!!"

Meru: "The Ancestor!!"

Ancestor Blanco: "You left the forest on your own volition. How come you have come back?"

Meru: "I just wanted to see everybody."

Ancestor Blanco: "Leaving the forest is an unforgivable mortal sin. Didn't you know that when you left for the world of Humans? As well as that, you could never come back here."

Meru: "Yes I did!! But it's strange!! The world is one hundred times bigger than this forest! There are, of course, bad Humans! But there are many good Humans too!! You never met them and you shouldn't hate them!!"

Ancestor Blanco: "There are people who hate and dested Humans just because they are Humans, but their number is few. We just want to protect our life. That's all. Humans have always been afraid of the magic power of Winglies. The fear eventually turns itself into a need to tyrannize us, and take some action. Either to subjugate or kill Winglies. That's why we need our own world, like this forest, where Humans cannot enter. Go back to the other world. Your existence angers the others."

Meru: "I understand. I'll leave."

????: "Meru!!"

Meru: "Mother!"

Meru's Father: "Leave the girl alone!"

Meru: "Father, you must be kidding?"

Meru's Father: "That's the rule. We are going."

[Her parents leave.]

Meru: "Mother.... Father...."

Ancestor Blanco: "It must be hard for you, but you must go back, Meru."

Younger Bardel: "Get out of our forest at once!!"

[Meru leaves; Guaraha picks her up and drops her by the entrance.]

Meru: "Guaraha!? Wha, What are you doing!?"

Guaraha: "Quiet. I want to talk between just the two of us. It seems you received a horrible welcome."

Meru: "It's nothing to me."

Guaraha: "Stop talking tough. Meru, it was just bad timing. Everybody is feeling tense lately."

Meru: "Is that my fault too?"

Guaraha: "No. Recently, the earth is surging. Don't you feel it Meru?"

Meru: "I've been feeling it a little. The animals in the forest are all acting savage. This must be the cause. But, what is this?"

Guaraha: "Ancestor Blanco said that it is the omen of a Dragon coming back to life. And, it is not the usual one. Even our ancestors who had much stronger magic power couldn't defeat it."

Meru: "Wh, what kind of Dragon is that?"

Guaraha: "It's the strongest Dragon of all. The King of Dragons, with seven magical eyes. The Divine Dragon."

Meru: "Divine Dragon?"

Guaraha: "The Ancestor says that the seal has half dissolved. That's why everybody is nervous."

Meru: "B, but!! We have a Dragon Buster and a Dragon Block Staff, don't we!?"

Guaraha: "The sword for killing Dragons, the Dragon Buster, has been lost."

Meru: "It, It wasn't me!"

Guaraha: "We know. Because it was hidden with the staff in a place that only the Ancestor could open."

Meru: "And...the talk you wanted between just the two of us is about the Dragon?"

Guaraha: "That too. But what I really wanted to tell you is something else. Meru, don't leave me! I want you to be at my side! I can protect you if everybody opposes you!"

Meru: "You are kind, as always. But if you do, you will be hated as well. I gotta go. Everybody's waiting for me."

Guaraha: "You...have friends."

Meru: "They are all cool. They show me and teach me many things. Ciao!"

Guaraha: "Meru!!"

[She leaves. Back in Deningrad...]

Librarian Ute: "What are you going to do? Are you going to pursue that man, Lloyd? When you get time, go visit Neet. You cannot change the past, however, you can face it. By facing it, maybe you can find out where you are from and where you want to go."

Haschel: "I guess he wasn't just a snob."

Dart: "Well we have to wait for Rose and Meru. ...!?"

Shana: "Is anything wrong!?"

Dart: "N...no. I just felt a little shiver, that's all."

Albert: "I feel...something is wrong."

[At the town entrance:]

Rose: "Did you find out anything about Lloyd?"

Dart: "No, there is no trace yet."

Rose: "I just happened to meet them. This is Luanna and Setie."

Dart: "...?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Excuse me, but you had some changes in your body recently."

Dart: "What are you talking about?"

Town Dweller: "Sister Luanna!! Sister Setie!! Thank you, Sister Luanna! Now I can walk outside! How can I thank you?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "It is fine. That is what we, the Sacred Sisters, are for."

Albert: ("I would like to talk to you. Can we go someplace else?")

[Over at the inn...]

Albert: "You are...the renowned Sacred Sisters of Mille Seseau, Sister Luanna and Sister Setie. It is a pleasure to meet you."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "It is my pleasure to meet the heroes who defeated the Sea Dragon in Illisa Bay! I was really lucky to follow her from Neet."

Dart: "Sister Luanna, I heard about you from Librarian Ute. We have something in common, we are survivors of Neet."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "So you went through that tragedy."

Dart: "Do you remember anything!? About other survivors...or the whereabouts of the Black Monster, or anything!"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "What I remember is only the sound of terror. I am sorry. I don't think I can help you."

Dart: "I see. But...it's okay. The fact that somebody survived that tragedy means I can have hope that continuing my journey will someday lead to the Black Monster."

Shana: "I am with you too. Oh, does that mean you went to Neet too, Rose?"

Rose: "I told you, I just happened to be there."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Um, Sister Luanna. What about the health of Mr. Dart?"

Dart: "Yes. What do you mean the unusualness of my body?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "I see that you people have strong powers. A power that is beyond Humans. It seems that the source of your power is in turmoil. Another power that has influence over you is anticipating the liberation. That is what I see. That is all I can tell. If it confuses you more, please forgive me.

Dart: "!!!"

[The inn shakes.]

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Oh no! Sister Luanna!"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "This is.... The answer to your question.... You may find out the truth about the entity that has influence over you now!"

Narrative?: War is not in human nature. Humans fight by making themselves enter insanity. It is...the same for revenge. This is a tool to amplify the insanity. And this insanity is the source of the power of Dragoons, the Dragon Knight. Someday, something will happen, and if you cannot chasten your insanity, I wonder if you will be able to endure it, given the size of your spirit?

Shana: "Dart!?"

Dart: "I...I'm fine."

[Outside, the Divine Dragon flies over Deningrad.]

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Anger, or animosity, towards Humans or all things."

Meru: "Heeeey buddies!! Omigod omigod!! Could it be?"

Rose: "The arrival of the 'One who glares through seven diabolic eyes, and who crosses the sky with seven wings'. It's trouble. It's the King of Dragons. The Divine Dragon."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "The legend was true, 'The King of Dragons sealed by the long gone Winglies rests in the ground of Mille Seseau. Once it awakens again, it shall bring terror to the world.'"

Albert: "Again.... We are facing a Dragon."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "What are you people?"

Dart: "We are the Dragoons. We are the Dragon Knights who have the power to rule Dragons."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Dragoons.... The legendary Dragon Knights!! That is the reason why I feel a strong power in you. But, why did the Dragoons come to this country? Is it because of that Dragon!?"

Dart: "No. We are here to pursue a man. He is a sneaky, dangerous man even for those with the strength of us Dragoons."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "What did that man do?"

Albert: "He engaged in secret maneuvers during the Serdian War, and formed a conspiracy for a coup d'etat in Tiberoa."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Is he going to bring evil to Mille Seseau? Oh! Is that the Dragon!? Please see Queen Theresa. It seems that we need the power of you Dragoons."

[At Queen Theresa's throne...]

Commander of Holy Knights: "What I'm telling you is that whatever the monster is, with the force of the Holy Knights, nothing can stand against us!"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Have you ever seen the monster?"

Commander of Holy Knights: "According to the briefing by my man, it is bigger than a cloud and faster than our horses! It's impossible for such a creature to exist!"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Where does your confidence come from!?"

Commander of Holy Knights: "It is impossible for such a creature to exist."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "You idiot!"

[She punches him.]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Talking about the enemy based on mere assumptions! Are you going to expose your men to such danger!? You are dismissed, Commander of Knights!"

Commander of Holy Knights: "Yes, ma'am!!"

[Everyone enters at this point.]

Queen Theresa: "Calm down, Miranda. You are in front of guests. Luanna, Setie, I'm glad to see you came back safe."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "You've never changed, Sister Miranda."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "He doesn't understand the current condition. Who are these people?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "I brought them in order to save Mille Seseau from the intruder."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "You said to 'save'?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "If we do not take action, it will attack us again. And next time, it might attack us directly."

Queen Theresa: "Do you know anything about the monster?"



Rose: "It is the Divine Dragon, awakened from his long rest. Now wonder he is cranky."

Queen Theresa: "The Divine Dragon!? You are...talking about...that monster sealed in the Mountain of Mortal Dragon."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Yes. The King of the Dragons, sealed in by the ancient Winglies. The Divine Dragon came back to life."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Are you sure of that!?"

Queen Theresa: "Please relax, Miranda. You...said... You will save this country. Is it possible for us Humans to defeat a Dragon?"

Dart: "We don't know yet. However, we might be able to stop it."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What confidence you have."

Dart: "We are the Dragon Knights, who rule Dragons, the Dragoons. There is nobody but us who can stand up to him."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Are you saying you are the hereoes from the Dragon Campaign? The Dragoons!?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "I was surprised too. However, I don't see any falsehood in their heart."

Queen Theresa: "It means.... May we request your help in vanquishing the Divine Dragon?"

Rose: "You are free to ask. In either case, we have to meet him. But, we have a favor to ask, Your Majesty. There is one thing we need in order to cross swords with the Divine Dragon. It is said that Winglies made two weapons in ancient times to fight against Dragons. One is a sword to kill Dragons, namely the Dragon Buster."

Meru: "Wh, What!! How do you know about that, Rose!? Oops. I didn't say anything."

Shana: "Wait a second. Isn't that the sword?"

Dart: "Yes, it is. It's the sword that the bastard used to kill Lavitz. I'll never forget."

Rose: "Therefore, we have no choice but to count on the other weapon."

Queen Theresa: "What could that be?"

Rose: "The Dragon Block Staff. As the name implies, it is a magic staff to block the power of Dragons."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "And, where is the Dragon Block Staff?"

Rose: "I was going to ask you. Actually, it seems that one of us knew about it. Meru?"

Meru: "W, what are you talking about?"

Shana: "Do you know about it?"

Queen Theresa: "Please tell us. For the sake of this country!"

Dart: "Why are you hesitating?"

Meru: "Okay!! Okay!! I'll tell you guys, all right!? I think it's in the Forest of Winglies!"

Dart: "Forest of Winglies? Where the heck is that?"

Meru: "Um, it's in the northern part of the Evergreen Forest."

Queen Theresa: "If so, are you saying that Winglies still live."

Meru: "Uh huh."

Queen Theresa: "It seems that the myth of fairies in the Evergreen Forest area was true."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Queen Theresa. I am heading to the Forest of Winglies with these people in order to borrow the Dragon Block Staff."

Dart: "Are you coming too?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Of course. The problems are too big to leave just to you. Besides, I want to see how far you Dragoons can go. If you really have the power as described in legend."

Queen Theresa: "I beg you people, please save Mille Seseau from the Divine Dragon."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Now, we are heading to the Forest of Winglies! No time for procrastination!"

[In the lobby...]

Albert: "Please wait. I don't see Shana."

Dart: "Where did she go?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What timing. Let's go look for her. We have no time to waste."

[In the audience hall's antechamber...]

Dart: "Shana! Are you all right!?"

Shana: "Where...where am I? When...did I come here?"

Dart: "What happened?"

Shana: "I don't know. But...that took me?"

Dart: "Miranda, what is this room for?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "This castle used to be a fort for Winglies. I heard this room used to be a chamber for a

ceremony to seal something. But it was more than 10,000 years ago."

Albert: "Isn't it the reason the Divine Dragon made a raid on the Crystal Palace? In other words, he is trying to work off his hatred against Winglies."

Dart: "Why did you come here alone? Were you called again, like the time with the Virage?"

Shana: "No, it was different this time. I woke up and I was here. I feel hot. It's gone. My...."

[The White Silver DS goes to Miranda.]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What is this!?"

Shana: "I cannot manage it anymore. I don't feel the power of the White Silver Dragon."

Dart: "You.... You are a Dragoon too!?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Me!?"

Rose: "Dragoon Spirits manipulate fate. Hmm."

Shana: "I can...no longer...."

Dart: "Shana!!!"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Hey! What's going on!? What is this stone!?"

[In the guestroom...]

Shana: "I...see. I passed out."

Dart: "Are you all right?"

Shana: "Yes, but I don't think...I can go with you anymore."

Dart: "There is nothing you can do in your condition."

Shana: "I knew it, from the day I looked at the moon in Furni. I was sure this would happen to me."

Dart: "We will be back as soon as we defeat the Divine Dragon. So, wait for me till then?"

Meru: "Lighten up!"

Haschel: "I will work hard for you Shana!"

Kongol: "Kongol too."

Albert: "It won't be long. Dart will be back with you soon, Shana."

Shana: "Don't worry. I am accustomed to waiting. But thanks, everyone."

[Everyone leaves.]

Shana: "Miranda. Please take care of...the rest..."

Miranda: "I know."

-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 37 - Forest of Winglies FWG1 |  
-----o

[The party journeys into the northern depths of Evergreen Forest.]

Dart: "A dead end."

Meru: "Here we are at the entrance to the Forest of Winglies." \*Sigh\* "Maybe I'll be kicked out again."

Dart: "Where is the entrance? I see nothing."

Meru: "There is a magical boundary here. Winglies have locked themselves in the forest since the Dragon Campaign."

Dart: "How come they didn't live with humans?"

Meru: "You know about the Dragon Campaign?"

Albert: "It is the war that Humans, who obtained the power of the Dragoons, started in order to liberate themselves from the control of Winglies."

Meru: "Some Winglies are still angry about that. Besides, Winglies have a power that Humans don't have. The Ancestor told me, that the power draws a line between Humans and us."

Dart: "Meru, are you...?"

Meru: "Yup. I'm a Wingly."

[She opens the boundary.]

Meru: "Are you surprised?"

Dart: "Yeah!"

Miranda: "Why didn't you tell us?"

Meru: "Would you believe me? Would you consider me as a friend if I told you guys?"

Dart: "It doesn't matter. Meru is Meru, right? Now. Let's go see the Winglies. Now we are dealing with serious stuff."

[At the Winglies' town...]

Wingly A: "I wonder what would happen to us if the Divine Dragon came to this forest?"

Wingly B: "We would fight it with our magic, but probably would fail given our current level of power."

Wingly C: "But the Ancestor said that we won't become extinct if we cooperate with other species."

Wingly A: "'Other species'? Are you talking about Humans?"

Wingly C: "That's right, but I wonder if everybody in the forest can understand that, including me. !! The seal!"

[Dart's team teleports in.]

Wingly A: "Meru! The Humans!?"

Wingly B: "Meru brought Humans here!!"

Wingly C: "I'm going to let the Ancestor know!!"

Meru: "Don't shoot!! They are my friends!!"

Dart: "We are not here to fight! We are here to borrow the Dragon Block Staff!"

Wingly A: "The Dragon Block Staff!?! Meru! How dare you speak about our secret to them!"

Meru: "But the Diving Dragon is now awake!!"

Wingly A: "B, But.... What can Humans do if they cannot even use magic?"

Miranda: "Should we break through?"

Dart: "No we should not. We have to take some action or everything may be destroyed. That includes the Forest of Winglyes and human cities!"

Wingly C: "Everyone! Hold on! The Ancestor says he will meet with the Humans! You.... Please, don't agitate the people in the forest. We are not used to seeing Humans. But.... Watch out for the Bardel Brothers."

Meru: "What do you mean!?! Let's go, Dart! The Ancestor Blanco is in the back of the forest!"

[En route to Blanco...]

Meru: "Bardel! Are you bothering us again!?"

Elder Bardel: "The Divine Dragon can be taken care of us by without asking Humans for help. Besides we have no business talking to a betrayer who ran off to Humans."

Meru: "What happened to you!?! The Bardel I knew was much kinder, and wasn't like that!"

Elder Bardel: "My baby sister was killed by...a human."

Meru: "Oh no!?"

Elder Bardel: "My baby sister who was influenced by you, Meru, and left the forest! Believing that the outside world was wonderful. We don't need Humans' help. Do you have something else to say? Get out!"

Dart: "There might be more people killed now!"

Elder Bardel: "Good for you! It's a good chance to learn how helpless you Humans are! But we Winglyes won't die. Our magic power surpasses

the Dragons'."

Rose: "You are strong, huh? Don't make me laugh. I wonder if you have noticed you are declining because you cling to the glory of the past?"

Elder Bardel: "What are you talking about?"

Rose: "You can barely fly and that's about it, right?"

Elder Bardel: "Maybe you won't think that way after this!?"

[He shoots a fireball but Dart's dragoon form blocks it.]

Elder Bardel: "!? No way! Is this the legendary Dragoon!?"

Dart: "Please let us take care of the Divine Dragon."

Meru: "I'll come back to take care of your baby sister's matter, after my journey has ended. So please trust us for now."

Rose: "The ones who flaunt their power disappear when the truly powerful appear. I am going ahead."

[They leave Bardel alone.]

Elder Bardel: "If we cannot even have revenge for our baby siter anymore.... The Divine Dragon cannot be.... I feel weak in my knees.... I cannot move.... Is this real!? Ahh!!"

Younger Bardel: "You wimp! Brother! How dare you Humans! Just because you are afraid of our magic power, you are sending the destroyers of old, Dragoons, at us. Silly Humans! I'll past sentence for the sin of killing my sister! I'll annihilate them now!!"

[They finally reach the Ancestor.]

Dart: "There is nobody here."

Miranda: "Where is the Ancestor?"

Dart: "My body is being healed."

Albert: "Is this the magical healing?"

Rose: "I wonder if it is an apology for the discourtesy?"

Meru: "Ancestor, sorry we are late."

Ancestor Blanco: "Welcome. Humans and Giganto. I am Blanco the Ancestor of the forest."

Miranda: "I am teh First Sacred Sister of Mille Seseau, Miranda. Please forgive our sudden visit."

Dart: "I would like you to listen to our story. The Divine Dragon is...."

Ancestor Blanco: "I know. The Divine Dragon came back to life in the Mountain of the Mortal Dragon, and there are Dragoons that have come to us. It seems that the times won't leave us alone. The messenger from the Crystal Palace, and the people who were

fated to come here.... Our opponent is so enormous. We have to combine each of our strengths or none of us will survive. Neither the Crystal Palace nor our forest."

Dart: "You mean...."

Ancestor Blanco: "Let us put the power of the Dragoons and our wisdom together.

Miranda: "You will let us borrow your Dragon Block Staff!"

Ancestor Blanco: "We don't have the Dragon Buster now. So the Dragon Block Staff is our last resort. We no longer have the power to master that, however, if you, who rule the Dragons can use it, we can fight against the Divine Dragon."

Miranda: "I appreciate your kindness!"

Ancestor Blanco: "However, we cannot participate in the battle. We are all that remain. We cannot become extinct."

Meru: "I'm going!!"

Dart: "I know. You are a Dragoon too, Meru."

Ancestor Blanco: "Go inside. I will show you the way to the Dragon Block Staff.

[He opens a door and leads everyone but Meru inside.]

Dart: "I'll meet you there, Meru."

Ancestor Blanco: "You are attracted to those Humans."

Meru: "Yup. They are really cool! Ancestor!! I wanna go on the journey with them! And I wanna see...my mother and father anytime I want!"

Ancestor Blanco: "Are you telling me to throw our commandment away? It is not the right time yet. But eventually, in the near future, the time will come when us and Humans live together. Go with them. As a Wingly, go see Humans, or better yet, the entire world. Your experience will lead us."

Meru: "Okay! I hear ya! I'll meet you there!"

[She leaves.]

Ancestor Blanco: "If Meru is one leading us to the outer world.... Where are those Humans leading the world to? It must be the flow of time. Only the fates can tell."

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 38 - Royal Capital Kadessa RCK1 |  
o-----o

[Up above the Wingly City...]

Ancestor Blanco: "The Dragon Block Staff is sealed in the Forbidden Land over there."

Dart: "Forbidden Land."

Ancestor Blanco: "It is the place where our hideous memory sleeps. It used to be, until 11,000 years ago, a palace for us Winglyes and it was the place where eternal prosperity was promised. It was called the royal capital Kadessa. Now it is a mere ruin without a name."

Dart: "Are you sure? Is it okay to go in?"

Ancestor Blanco: "It is fine. Everything is in the past."

Dart: "I see. We have to do what we can do now."

Ancestor Blanco: "Are you ready?"

R1 -> Please wait a little.

R2 -> Yes we are.

R1: "Please wait a little."

Meru: "What's wrong? We don't know when the Divine Dragon will come."

Dart: "I feel some monster over there."

Ancestor Blanco: "There is still some magic power left. And it attracts monsters. It won't be an easy road to the Dragon Block Staff. When you are ready, come to me. I'll lead you to the Forbidden Land."

R2: "Yes we are."

[The Ancestor makes the towers spin and rocks create a circle.]

Dart: "This is...the wisdom of the Winglyes!?"

Ancestor Blanco: "It's a ruin of their wisdom. Let's go!!"

[They teleport to Kadessa, finally. It's red-colored and barren.]

Dart: "So, this is the Forbidden Land. The ruins of past glory..."

Albert: "No remnant of the royal capital remains."

Dart: "What's wrong, Meru? You are shaking."

Meru: "Cuz I, I hear the outcries of the people who died here."

Dart: "Are you going to wait in the forest, Meru?"

Meru: "No! I'm okay! If I can't get past such a small thing, how will I be able to fight against the Divine Dragon!?"

[Towards the center colosseum-type area...]

Miranda: "It's such a large space."

Haschel: "Indeed. I wonder what it was for?"

Kongol: "Kongol feels.... Smells like blood."



Albert: "'Blood', and a large space. It sounds like a coliseum."

Meru: "Yes, it really was. I heard it from the Ancestor. Once upon a time, it was a coliseum. But it wasn't for regular fights that you won or lost. It was for matches to the death. Winglies would just enjoy the view from above...or fighters picked from among the dominated Humans, Dragons, and some Gigantos. I am the offspring of that kind of Wingly."

Dart: "The Ancestor told us that this is a mere ruin, didn't he?"

Meru: "..."

Dart: "What happened here happened in the past. No matter what sorrow there was, it is no longer our sorrow. Isn't that right?"

Albert: "There is nothing to worry about, Meru. The sins of the past are there just to tell us not to repeat them anymore."

Dart: "Cheer up! Let's focus on moving on."

[Eventually the party can choose to go down a path split. 'PATH A' starts by going down a teleporter from the savepoint room; 'PATH B' from the building north of that area. First, PATH A. In a room nearby, Dart destroys a barrier generator.]

Meru: "That's right! It must be the seal for that! We can move on when we destroy'em all!"

Dart: "I got it!"

[Eventually the party gets to the DBS room.]

Meru: "This is the Dragon Block Staff!!!"

Miranda: "It doesn't look very impressive. Can we really constrain the Divine Dragon with this?"

Rose: "You can never tell the size of the magical power from the size of the object. The power of this staff alone has been sealing off the Divine Dragon for more than 10,000 years."

Miranda: "I see, then when we take this back and deploy our defense of the royal capital, the Divine Dragon will be no match for us."

Rose: "It won't be as easy as you imagine. The Divine Dragon is not the same as the other Dragons. Even with the staff and us Dragoons, we will have reason for thanks if we can seal him back in."

Dart: "Is Lloyd taming such a monster?"

Rose: "Talking about that, I don't think it is possible. The Divine Dragon would never give in. They couldn't kill him either. That's why he was sealed in. It's way beyond Lloyd's ability to deal with."

Dart: "Then, it means Lloyd has not taken any aciton yet?"

Rose: "Maybe he cannot act."

Albert: "There is no sign he is going after the next Divine Moon Object yet."

Miranda: "The moon...object!?"

Dart: "You must have it in Mille Seseau, don't you? A Divine Object with a name starting with Moon?"

Miranda: "I don't want to talk about it."

Dart: "How come?"

Miranda: "It's not your business. Just focus on how you can bring the staff back now."

Dart: "Okay."

Meru: "I'm getting it! Whoa!! What the heck is this!?"

[Meru pulls down the Grand Jewel boss. But, it's defeated anyway.]

[Acquired Dragon Block Staff]

Albert: "We didn't know there was a guardian."

Haschel: "The Ancestor should've told us so."

Meru: "I didn't know that either."

Dart: "Anyway, the Dragon Block Staff is in our hands. Let's go back quickly."

[PATH B time! An elevator descends to Dart eventually.]

Dart: "What is this!?"

[Dart takes it up and finds a weird, flourescent being near a walkway.]

Dart: "It's a dead end here. Let's go back."

Rose: "Wait! This is a Virage! And this scar!! It must be the Virage that killed Belzac."

Dart: "You say this is a Virage?"

Miranda: "What are you talking about?"

Albert: "It was a destructive weapon of ancient legend that battled throughout the Dragon Campaign with the Winglies. Although some still remain."

Meru: "But it looks totally different from the one we met before."

Rose: "It's one of their subspecies and from its shape, it must have a power far beyond the one we saw. But, it's not a very pretty sight to see."

Dart: "!!!"

Meru: "The Virage..."

Dart: "The monster from ten thousand years ago. Was it awoken by us!?"

[After a bit of fighting.]

Dart: "Everybody hang in there!! This thing is half dead!!"

[It finally dies.]

Dart: "Why do Virages wake up in reaction to us?"

Meru: "I dunno. The Ancestor never mentioned about this thingy."

Rose: "So, does this mean they were not just reacting to Shana?"

Dart: "Shana.... I still don't know anything about the mystery surrounding Shana. There is no choice for us but going forward. Come on, let's go back to the Crystal Palace."

[As the party tries to leave...]

Dart: "!! It cannot be.... Is that the Divine Dragon!?"

Miranda: "Don't be silly!! It's too early!! !!"

[A shadow flies overhead.]

Miranda: "Oh no, Deningrad!!"

Dart: "We gotta run!!"

[They return to the entrance.]

Ancestor Blanco: "Did you get the Dragon Block Staff!?"

Dart: "We did! But the Divine Dragon!"

Ancestor Blanco: "I know! I am teleporting you to Deningrad!!"

Meru: "Ancestor! It's too much! You don't have power like in the old days do you!?"

Ancestor Blanco: "We have no time left to think!! Hunnnnnnnnnnaaaaaahhhhh!  
Aaaaaahhhhhh!"

Meru's Father: "Ancestor Blanco!!"

Ancestor Blanco: "I'm fine."

[Dart's team can't teleport.]

Ancestor Blanco: "It didn't work."

Meru's Father: "Not yet!! We believe in Meru!! And her friends who Meru believes in too!!"

Meru's Mother: "I would like to see the future that Meru and her friends create!!"

Ancestor Blanco: "Guaraha!? Go on! Dart!"

[Everyone helps teleport them to Deningrad.]

[The Divine Dragon attacks the town, blows the seal chamber off the Crystal Palace, then leaves in a hurry.]

Miranda: "We're too late!! Is, is this Deningrad!? The Crystal Palace is destroyed!! Queen Theresa!! Don't be such a laggard!! Shana is in the castle too!!

[Just inside...]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Setie!! Luanna!! Wake up!!"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Ah.... S, Sister...Miranda?"

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Sister Miranda, are we...alive?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Good. It seems you are not injured either."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "I, I was scared."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Stop crying. The Divine Dragon is gone. And we will take care of it."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Did you get the Dragon Block Staff?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Yes, we got it."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Now, we can prepare for the next raid."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What do you mean 'next'?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "The psyche that the Divine Dragon sent towards the Crystal Palace was a black, bottomless mass of hate. There must be a 'next'."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "I won't let him!"

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "What about Queen Theresa!? Is Queen Theresa safe!?"

[Miranda slaps a soldier.]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Hey!! Wake up!!"

Holy Knights Gate Keeper: "Ah, yes ma'am!! Sister Miranda!!"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Take care of these two!!"

[Miranda runs ahead.]

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Don't worry. Queen Theresa is safe. Wink is fine too. Everything is fine, thanks to her."

Dart: "Are you all right!?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "We are fine. Sister Miranda went upstairs."

Dart: "What about Shana!?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "She should be upstairs too."

[Upstairs...]

Dart: "Wink! Are you all right!?"

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "I am fine. Sister Miranda gave me treatment."

Dart: "!! Shana's room!!"

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Wait! Miss Shana is alive! She must be upstairs  
with Queen Theresa."

Dart: "I got it!!"

[In the audience hall...]

Meru: "Wow!"

Dart: "What is this light?"

Albert: "What is going on?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "I don't know. When I came here it was already  
like this."

Dart: "Shana!?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Queen Theresa!! Where are you!?"

[The light ends and its source is Shana...]

Dart: "Shana!!"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Queen Theresa!!"

Shana: "Dart!?"

Dart: "It's me! Can you understand?"

Shana: "Dart.... Everybody.... You are safe. How about Queen Theresa?"

Queen Theresa: "Ah...."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Queen Theresa!!"

Queen Theresa: "Miranda?"

Dart: "Don't worry. Queen Theresa is safe."

Shana: "I'm relieved."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "I couldn't live if something happened to Queen  
Theresa. I'm relieved. I'm really relieved."

Queen Theresa: "You cannot call Setie a crybaby anymore."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "I don't care! Please let me cry for now, just  
for now!"

[Later on...]

Queen Theresa: "Everything has calmed down anyhow. Welcome back. And no one was lost. Fortunately, the damage to the people seems to be minimal. I assume we had the blessing of the Divine Tree."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What was that light? It was as if it were protecting Queen Theresa and Shana."

Dart: "Yes, the light was...."

[Flashback: before the Divine Dragon attacks Deningrad.]

Queen Theresa: "Are you feeling all right?"

Shana: "Not really, but I cannot stand still."

Queen Theresa: "I see. It seems that all we can do is trust them and wait."

Shana: "Yes, Your Majesty."

Queen Theresa: "What is happening!?"

[Shana's light protects them both. Back to the present.]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Oh, this must be a miracle! Shana! You brought us a miracle! My sisters were guarded by the same light as well! Everyone was saved by you!"

Shana: "But I don't know anything about this power. This power is forcing Dart to face danger. And, I harm people! The people in Seles too, it was my fault."

Dart: "That's not true! It was Doel who did that!"

Shana: "Who am I?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "She passed out."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "It was my fault. I didn't know anything and I told her too much. Where are you going?"

Dart: "To the Mountain of Mortal Dragon."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Are you leaving Shana like that!?"

Dart: "I'll come back after I defeat the Divine Dragon. Miranda, could you take care of Shana?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Are you telling me to stay here!?"

Dart: "The Divine Dragon is not the only monster in the Mt. of Mortal Dragon! You are a Sacred Sister of this country. There is no obligation for you to come with us."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "Did you forget? I am one of the Dragoons, the same as you. I have no intention to withdraw from this battle. Besides, Shana told me. 'Please take care of the rest'. I intend to keep that promise."

Queen Theresa: "We have reached an agreement. Everyone, I am counting on you."

Dart: "Yes, Your Majesty. Please trust us."

[In the town inn, Shana wakes.]

Dart: "I'll bring everybody here."

Meru: "Did the two of you have enough time alone? We can wait outside longer if you want."

Haschel: "I didn't know you could be sensible, Meru! Ha ha ha!"

Meru: "Of course! I learned how to care for others from them!"

Haschel: "We gotta get going."

Albert: "We will be back soon."

Miranda: "Are you all right?"

Rose: "I cannot believe your timing."

Miranda: "That is no way to talk to a friend!"

Rose: "I haven't seen your power as a Dragoon, have I?"

Miranda: "Are you saying you don't trust me!?"

Shana: "Please stop. Miranda is fine. She can do better than me."

Rose: "I hope so."

Miranda: "Is she like that all the time?"

Shana: "Actually Rose is concerned about me."

Miranda: "What a clumsy woman."

Kongol: "Kongol is leaving. You rest. Good for you."

Dart: "I am leaving. ..."

[Outside the inn where Shana is...]

Dart: "Let's go to the Mt. Dragon Tomb."

[In Evergreen Forest, they find a knight.]

Sacred Knight: "The monster was headed in the direction of Deningrad, and then came back to the Mountain of Mortal Dragon!!"

Dart: "Before the Divine Dragon left, did anybody pass through here?"

Sacred Knight: "No, sir! No one, sir. We didn't even let a mouse pass, sir! Unless they can fly like that monster!"

Miranda: "Gotcha. Stay on guard here. We are off to defeat the monster."

Sacred Knight: "Yes ma'am!! Good luck!!"

[Up the mountainside, a large beam of energy flies out from somewhere.]

Miranda: "It is from the top of Mountain of Mortal Dragon!!"

Meru: "That was a magic power! An awfully powerful mega magic!"

Haschel: "Whatever it is, that is our destination."

Rose: "As if.... It is unburdening his anger all over the world. The anger toward the Winglies who sealed him."

Albert: "And us Humans who dominated Dragons."

Miranda: "Then, does this mean that Deningrad was chosen to be the place for the declaration of war!?"

Dart: "We will settle that on the top of the Mountain of Mortal Dragon. Before the next town becomes a victim."

[Near the summit...]

Rose: "The sound of swords.... No, has somebody already started to fight against it!? Let's go. Either way, we will have to join in."

[The sound of swords is nearby...]

Rose: "You can go back now."

Dart: "There is nobody who would think that way."

Meru: "Um. May I excuse myself for a bit?"

Haschel: "You are the representative of the Winglies! Come on!"

Miranda: "Are you going back to your forest to hide?"

Meru: "I, I was just kidding!! When I do it I can do it!!"

Albert: "I made up my mind. Anyway.... If the people of Serdio knew about this, they would all fall over."

Dart: "Let's do it! !? Lloyd!?"

[Lloyd is the one fighting the Divine Dragon.]

Lloyd: "It is earlier than I expected. Well, it is the future King of Dragons. Even with the Dragon Buster, which can kill Dragons, he still gave me a hard time. But he is almost dead. There is no need for you to come in."

Dart: "You say you are fighting against the Divine Dragon!?"

Albert: "You broke the seal on the strongest Dragon of all, but you couldn't control it! It's the truth, isn't it!?"

Miranda: "What are you yapping about!? We can kill this man anytime!! We have to defeat the Divine Dragon first!!"



Lloyd: "The Sacred Sister of Mille Seseau, I see the replacement for that girl. How convenient for us."

Dart: "Shut up!! Urgh!!"

[Lloyd has fled somehow.]

Dart: "Yaaaaaaaaarrgghh!!"

[The party defeats the Divine Dragon and Lloyd stabs its eye. Lloyd gets the Divine Dragon Spirit.]

Dart: "Th, that is...!"

Lloyd: "Yes. This is the Dragoon Spirit. This is the soul of the Divine Dragon. The flame of a soul that sparkles only at the last moment of a dragon's life...its crystal is the Dragoon Spirit! As I expected, it doesn't sparkle in my hands."

Dart: "Lloyd!! That was your purpose wasn't it!?"

Lloyd: "This is just a little prize for me."

Dart: "A 'prize'!?"

Lloyd: "I don't need additional power to destroy the world. The Divine Dragon was a mere obstacle to my ideal. I fought against it for that reason only."

Albert: "You're the one who formed the conspiracy to destroy the world!"

Lloyd: "The King of Serdio, what brought you all the way here? Is it the frustration of having your Moon taken? Or your feelings toward your loyal friend, Lavitz?"

Dart: "Don't even mention that name!"

Lloyd: "It is too early yet to settle things."

Dart: "Wait!"

Lloyd: "Don't be so hasty. I'll see you soon."

[He teleports out.]

Dart: "Where is he going!?"

Albert: "He is leaving the mountain! Chase him!"

[The party retraces their steps down the mountain and finds Lloyd.]

Dart: "Lloyd! !!"

[He fires a flameball and knocks Dart & Rose off a ledge.]

Dart: "Argh!! I didn't know he was one of the Winglies!! Rose!? Rose! Come on!"

Rose: "Ah. Ahh...."

Dart: "Can you tell me who I am!?"

Rose: "I thought...you were dead."

Dart: "...?"

Rose: "Don't worry, I am carrying out your will. We took this world back together, I won't let them ruin it. Virage...embryo. The moon...with black power."

Dart: "'Black Power'? Are you talking about the Black Monster!?"

[Flashback: Neet 18 Years ago]

Knight of Mille Seseau: "UUURRRGGGHH!!"

[In the forest, Dart's family flees.]

Dart's Father: "Stay here. Take care of Dart."

[He returns to town.]

Dart's Mother: "Your father is a strong person. You have that strength in you. So.... You can wait here by yourself, okay."

Dart: "Where are you going?"

Dart's Mother: "I am going back to the village to fight."

Dart: "Really?"

Dart's Mother: "I will protect your hometown and your father. Live strong."

[The next morning, Dart strolls through the ashes of town.]

Dart: "Mom? Dad? This is my dad's...important...shiny stone. Mom. Dad."

[Back in the present time...]

Dart: "'Count 108 years, and when the Moon That Never Sets glares red, the Moon Child descends to the earth to give a holy blessing to the world.' Fester said.... What really appears is not the Moon Child, but the Black Monster. What kind of relationship exists between the Black Monster who destroys all and the Moon Child who blesses the world?" (Rose, what do you know about this?)

Meru: "Dart!! Rose!! Finally! I found you guys!! Oh boy, Rose! She passed out! Move away! I'll carry Rose first!"

[She carries them up.]

Meru: "Darn! I'm beaten!"

Rose: "It's my fault, letting him go.... I apologize for it."

Dart: "It is not your fault, Rose. Nobody knew he was a Wingly who can use magic."

Haschel: "Don't worry. We will find out where he went."

Albert: "I agree. Lloyd's objectives are still the Divine Moon Objects."

Dart: "Miranda, there is no need for you to hide it. Tell us about the Divine Moon Object in Mille Seseau."

Meru: "It's not like you, Miranda. Don't hesistate."

Miranda: "I guess, there is no choice but to tell everything. The Divine Moon Objects are said to be brought by Winglies. And, it is said that they have a dreadful magic power concealed within. That is the reason why they were never allowed to be taken outside. A national treasure that has been kept a close secret. It is called the Moon Mirror. The successive thrones have been the keys to opening the seal. Oh, it cannot be!"

Dart: "Queen Theresa is in danger!"

[Meanwhile, in Evergreen Forest, Wink and some knights are walking.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "I wonder where Sister Miranda and the other people area...? And, if they're safe?"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "To make sure of that we, the Sacred Brotherhood, are going to act as reinforcements. Don't worry there is no way our Sister Miranda can lose."

Sacred Knight A: "Yes indeed. We cannot imagine her losing."

Sacred Knight B: "But, I cannot imagine that the giant Dragon will lose either."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Please don't say such an ill-omened thing!"

Sacred Knight B: "I, I'm sorry ma'am!"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "Sister Miranda, Dart, and company are legendary Dragoons. We might not be needed."

?????: "Dragoons!? They are mere Humans anyway!!"

[The Younger Bardel appears.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Who is it!?"

Younger Bardel: "Humans don't need to know my name!"

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Oh no! Are you a Wingly?"

Younger Bardel: "Yes I am! We were the rulers of you Humans in ancient Endiness!! And now!! I am your executioner!!"

[He fires a fireball at the knights, knocking them over.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Oh my god!! This is what you asked for! This is the great battle of liberation!! And your scream is its overture!! You conceited Humans! Go tell hell!!"

[Lloyd protects Wink.]

Lloyd: "The conceited one is you."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Oh, you are...Mr. Lloyd!!"

Lloyd: "You are so easily overtaken."

Younger Bardel: "You blocked the magic power. Who are you!?"

Lloyd: "I don't need to answer you."

Younger Bardel: "Watch your mouth!!"

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Mr. Lloyd!!"

Younger Bardel: "I won't let anybody hinder the liberation of Winglies!! I'll annihilate all Humans!!"

Lloyd: "'Liberation' of Winglies? Hmph! You are so old-fashioned. A world without Humans? It won't be any different from the forest you are cooped up in. ... I have made many sacrifices for my ideals. But your ideals cannot be achieved unless you annihilate everything?"

Younger Bardel: "Of course!! My grudge!! My hatred!! I will settle'em all with human lives!!"

Lloyd: "You should not be alive."

Younger Bardel: "!!!"

[He stabs him with the Dragon Buster.]

Younger Bardel: "I, I won't die alone!!"

[He self-destructs (LOL?), but Lloyd is only injured.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Mr. Lloyd?"

Lloyd: "I went out of my way...."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Oh, you are wounded!! Please let us treat you at the castle!"

[As the party tries to leave the forest.]

Commander of Sacred Knights: "Sister Miranda!!"

Miranda: "Oh, Commander of Knights!! We were successful in defeating the Divine Dragon and!! What happened to you. You are injured!?"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "Queen Theresa... Queen Theresa was abducted!!"

Miranda: "Wh, what did you say!?"

Dart: "By who!?"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "A man called L, Lloyd!!"

Dart: "We are too late!!"

[Miranda punches him.]

Miranda: "What were you doing!!"

Albert: "Do you know where he took her?"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "Well.... Sister Wink might know something!"

Miranda: "My sisters are safe aren't they!?"

Commander of Sacred Knights: "Everyone is waiting for the group to come back to the Crystal Palace!!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 41 - Crystal Palace at Deningrad III DNG3 |  
o-----o

[Back at the palace...]

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "What do you mean that Queen Theresa was taken away!? What happened!?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Let me tell you. A few days ago, when the howling of the Dragon from the Mountain of Mortal Dragon stopped. We assumed he had been successfully vanquished."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Everyone, everyone was happy about it."

[Flashback: a few days prior.]

Queen Theresa: "How long has it been since we have stopped hearing the howling of the Divine Dragon?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "It has been about one week now."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Don't worry! Sister Luanna said 'The feeling of the Divine Dragon is gone'!"

[Wink enters.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "I am back. I have good news for you, Queen Theresa. As Sister Luanna said, it seems they defeated the Divine Dragon."

Queen Theresa: "I am glad. Now we can focus on the recovery of the country. I appreciate it Wink. Please give the knights their well-earned rest."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "About the knights.... My knighthood is currently being treated. A Wingly who had something against Humans suddenly raided us."

Queen Theresa: "Winglies attacked you? According to Miranda, they are a friendly species."

???: "Some of the Winglies are militant."

[Lloyd enters.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "This gentleman repelled them so that we were able to come back to the castle safe and sound. Let me introduce him. His name is Mr. Lloyd, Your Majesty."

Lloyd: "It is a pleasure to meet you, Your Majesty."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Not only that, it was Mr. Lloyd who gave us the good news of the successful vanquishing of the Divine Dragon."

Queen Theresa: "... How did you find out about it?"

Lloyd: "It was, a coincidence. I saw Sister Miranda and her companions who completed the vanquishing in the Mt. Dragon Tomb."

Queen Theresa: "... I understand. Let me express my gratitude to you."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Actually, it was not the first time I was saved by Mr. Lloyd."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Oh! I remember! This gentleman is the man of the fate Sister Wink was talking about, isn't he!? Queen Theresa, she was saved from the bandits in Donau by this gentleman too!"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "It wasn't a coincidence, was it? Helping Wink, and coming here."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Sister Luanna? What are you talking about?"

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "The murderous intention you conceal inside... You cannot disguise it in front of me."

Queen Theresa: "Wink, Setie stay back. I felt it too, something very wrong."

Lloyd: "I hadn't intended to make a scene. However, sometimes it can't be avoided."

Fourth Sacred Sister Setie: "Queen Theresa!!"

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Mr. Lloyd. What on earth...?"

Queen Theresa: "Do not come closer! What do you want!?"

Lloyd: "I desire the Moon Mirror."

Queen Theresa: "Moon Mirror! H, How did you know about it!?"

Lloyd: "You don't need to worry about that. You should just take me there, Your Majesty."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Answer me. From the beginning...from the beginning, it was your purpose?"

Queen Theresa: "Wink! Get away!"

Lloyd: "I...just desire the power to create a utopia."

Second Sacred Sister Luanna: "Queen Theresa! He is reading your mind!!"

Lloyd: "Shall we go to the last Divine Moon Object?"

[He and the queen teleport out. Back to present day...]

Dart: "The last Divine Moon Object? Is he going to end this!? Miranda! Where is the Moon Mirror!?"

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "In the Tower of Flanel, to the west of Kashua Glacier."

Rose: "Theresa is the key to the tower."

First Sacred Sister Miranda: "I'll take care of the rest."

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Sister Miranda."

Dart: "We will bring Queen Theresa back! We are not going to let Lloyd get what he wants!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 42 - Kashua Glacier | KSH1 |  
o-----o

Dart: "What a cold place."

Haschel: "It pierces through my aged bones."

Miranda: "It is a land where the earth is eternally covered in ice. I understand that it must be harsh on someone who has never been here."

Meru: "Darn, I'm totally dying! Do you often visit such a place, Miranda?"

Miranda: "It's been awhile since I came all the way here. But, I would often come here to find solace for my loneliness."

Meru: "You've got such a kind mother like Queen Theresa, how could you have a 'lonely time'?"

Miranda: "Her Majesty Theresa is not my birth mother. My true birth mother abandoned me. After that, I met Her Majesty Theresa. Her Majesty Theresa cherished me when I was alone, as if I were her real daughter. Since then, I've never felt loneliness again."

[Dart approaches a weird wind-blowing noise further on.]

Dart: "!? What?"

Kongol: "Kongol feels. Monster angry. About we entered here."

Haschel: "I cannot imagine what they are thinking to live in such a cold place."

Kongol: "Monster, don't know coldness. Monster only knows to kill. It wants kill us."

Haschel: "Thank you but no thank you."

Miranda: "Here it comes!"

[The party defeats Windigo.]

Dart: "We barely defeated...."

Haschel: "Thanks to that, I got warmed up."

Miranda: "Hurry up, we are moving on! The Tower of Flanel is back there!"

[They reach the tower.]

Dart: "Look."

Miranda: "This is the Tower of Flanel. It's the ruin where the Moon Mirror was placed."

Meru: "It's a swirl."

Albert: "Again, this doesn't appear to be built by Humans."

Rose: "No, it's not. According to the legend, it was the Winglies' floating fort during the Dragon Campaign. I heard."

Haschel: "This can fly!?"

Rose: "Winglies in the past used to have an enormous amount of magic power."

Dart: "Then it wouldn't be strange if this much magic power is concealed in the Divine Moon Objects."

Albert: "For the people of Serdio, for King Zior, and for Princess Emille. No. This is a life or death matter for all of Endiness."

Dart: "That's even more of a reason. We must stop the ambitions of Lloyd here!"

-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 42 - Tower of Flanel TOF1 |  
-----o

[The party spots a weird thing inside.]

Albert: "Is this a plant?"

Haschel: "I don't know what it is, but it is completely covered."

Albert: "It must be at least 11,000 years since it was dropped on the earth."

Meru: "But I think this is a better one. Cuz, usually the ruins of Winglies are destroyed. Also, the magical teleporting device was working too."

Dart: "It is the place the royal family of Mille Seseau placed the Moon Mirror. I guess some functions are still working."

[The party uses a teleportation system, and then...]

Miranda: "The Moon Mirror is in there!"

Rose: "The Dragoon Spirit of the Divine Dragon is resonating."

Dart: "Lloyd!! Finally, we cornered him!!"



[In the Moon Mirror chamber...]

Lloyd: "I appreciate your cooperation."

Theresa: "What...are you...?"

Dart: "Lloyd!!"

Lloyd: "Here they are. I just got all three Divine Moon Objects. Now the world will be reborn into the utopia that Emperor Diaz and I desire."

Dart: "The world will be reborn?! What are you talking about?!"

Lloyd: "You should know, Your Majesty. The revolutionary plan created by the great will, Soa. And the flow of evolution woven by the Divine Tree. You Humans are merely the 106th in the plan. And...we Winglies are the 107th in the plan. I desire the 108th evolution! I desire a utopia created by the last species! For that, I will use every conceivable means!!"

Dart: "Lloyd, that's all you have to say!?"

Lloyd: "I'll let my sword say the rest. Shall we finish up!?"

[The party defeats Lloyd. As Dart attempts to deal the final blow, Wink goes and protects Lloyd, taking a sword slash for him.]

Third Sacred Sister Wink: "Please...forgive Lloyd."

[All allies except Dart leave the chamber.]

Rose: "Albert, don't you need to be upstairs? Lloyd killed...Lavitz."

Albert: "I trust Dart with everything. He will bring us the right answer."

Rose: "I agree."

Haschel: "I feel the same way."

Meru: "Ditto!"

[Upstairs...]

Lloyd: "Why? Why did you shield me? I took many people's lives away for my own ideal, and the Divine Moon Objects. I used you."

Wink: "Even if it is the truth.... The fact that you saved me is still true! Besides, your death won't solve anything. Shana was taken away!"

Dart: "Wh, what did you say!?"

Wink: "By the man named Emperor Diaz. He told us to bring the three Divine Moon Objects and Lloyd and come to Vellweb."

Lloyd: "Hmm, Emperor Diaz.... Finally he has begun to take action by himself. Now, take them to him. Even without me, my utopia will be build by Emperor Diaz. I completed all my tasks. Now, I have to settle up for what I have done so far. Kill me, and go to Vellweb! I dedicate my death to your departure!"

[Dart socks him good.]

Lloyd: "Is it out of pity?"

Dart: "Your death won't bring...anybody who died back! Lloyd, I'm gonna make you see it through to the end!"

[Dart leaves.]

Lloyd: "Passion.... Is this the power that drives them?"

[Downstairs...]

Albert: "Shana was....I see."

Rose: "When we go there, we can reveal the truth about the Emperor Diaz."

Albert: "Whoever he is, he is dangerous."

Haschel: "Besides! It is unforgivable to take our dear Shana as a hostage for his utopia or whatever!"

Meru: "Exactly! I'll beat him up whoever he is!!"

Dart: "Queen Theresa, we are heading to Vellweb. And we need to find the Moon...."

Theresa: "I understand. I will let you have the Moon Mirror. Maybe we were in denial, surrounding ourselves with a comfortable life that really was stagnant. Yes, we Humans are not the only species....and all species were given life by Soa's plan. Now is the time to remember. The sassault of the Divine Dragon, the existence of Winglies, the Divine Moon Objects, the utopia that Lloyd and Emperor Diaz desire.... And you, Dragoons. Everything is forcing us to remember it. As if things were manipulated by some great will called fate."

Dart: "Even if so, I don't care. I will take Shana back even from 'fate'!"

Theresa: "Miranda, you are one of the Dragoons. Go with Dart. Discover the meaning of the fate given by Soa."

[At the entrance...]

Dart: "Can I ask you one question?"

Lloyd: "Yes."

Dart: "Why did you save Wink twice?"

Lloyd: "I had no reason for doing that."

Dart: "I see." [Acquired Moon Mirror, Acquired Moon Dagger, Acquired Moon Gem]

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 43 - Snowfield SNW1 |  
o-----o

[The party stops near a cave.]

Lloyd: "I have something to tell you before we go to Vellweb. It's about Diaz.

Dart: "I see. With this blizzard.... It's not a bad time to take a break."

[They go in the toasty cave. The screen goes black.]

Diaz: "...Make the world regenerate."

Lloyd: "Regeneration...of the world?"

[Flashback: Ruin of Kadessa 3 years ago]

Diaz: "The world now is rotten, like a fallen fruit. It has the same smell as the world ruled by Melbu Frahma, the Wingly dictator. The world...where inertia is considered to be peace, and the easy path leads to devolution. The overture to the destruction has already begun."

Lloyd: "'Devolution'... You are saying that is the reason why our magic power is deteriorating?"

Diaz: "It is not only for you Winglyes. It is the danger all species are facing."

Lloyd: "Now, how can we regenerate the world?"

Diaz: "You Winglyes are merely the 107th species. The great will, the creator Soa prepared the last...the 108th species. The last species is the last god, which will regenerate the world and lead us to utopia!"

[Back in the Snowfield cave...]

Lloyd: "'Count 108 years and when the Moon That Never Sets glares red, the Moon Child descends to the earth and shall give a holy blessing to the world.' The 'Moon Child' of this legend is the last species. It is the god that gives holy bliss to the world."

Rose: "That's not true."

Lloyd: "It is the truth. Then why does the Black Monster continue to kill the Moon Child?"

Rose: "..."

Lloyd: "That devil wants to stop the evolution, after imagining himself scorched to death by the blessed light brought by the last species."

Dart: "Lloyd. What is the relationship between the Divine Moon Objects you have been pursuing, and the birth of the Moon Child?"

Lloyd: "The ancient Winglyes feared their status as the supreme species would end, and sealed up the 108th species. The keys to dissolving the signet are the gem, dagger, and mirror named after the moon."

Albert: "You were going to release the Moon Child, in other words, the 'God', using the Divine Moon Objects."

Lloyd: "If I don't do it, somebody else will. Even the last god cannot escape from the fate determined by Soa. That's all that I wanted to tell you. The rest will be told by Diaz."

Dart: "If you desire a utopia, why did you take Shana away!? What is Shana to you!?"

Lloyd: "All the truth will be told in Vellweb."

Meru: "Dart! The blizzard is over!"

[The party slides down a snowy slope accidentally and ends up by...]

Meru: "Hey! It's your fault Dart! You slipped and we all ended up in here! Oh!? These are the ancient characters of the Winglies! Let mse read it. 'Winglies, ouch, mos.' Oops. It's too hard to read."

Dart: "Can't you do better than that? There are some Human characters too...."

Kongol: "Gigantos too."

Dart: "... ... I was bad at classics. Can you ready some of them, Rose?"

Rose: "'The cursed land where the decline of the Winglies began. Nobody is allowed to touch the door. The judge Nomos of the court of Zenebatos.'"

Dart: "'Zenebatos'...?"

Rose: "It was one of the most prosperous cities of the ancient Winglies."

Dart: "It's over there?"

Rose: "No. If my memory is correct, over there should be Fort Magrad. But Vellweb is up there. Let's go back quickly."

Dart: "Okay."

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 44 - Fort Magrad FTM1 |  
o-----o

[If the party decides to enter the fort...]

Meru: "Yoo-hoo, Dart!!"

Rose: "I thought we have no business in here?"

Dart: "But, look at Meru. Let's give her a little break."

[Meru smacks Dart with a snowball.]

Meru: "You said this is Fort Magrad. Is this one of the Winglies' ruins too?"

Rose: "No. It belonged to Humans. It was the land where Diaz declared war against the Winglies with tens of thousands of soldiers and seven Dragoons. I heard about it."

Meru: "Dart!! Let's keep going!!"

[A ledge overlooks a court area.]

Dart: "Rose?"

Rose: (Dragoons are descending here in this place again.)

[Rose recalls her friend talking in the distant past...]

Diaz: "What we desire is freedom!! Or give us death!!"

Liberation Army of Humans: "God bless Diaz!! God bless Gloriano!!"

Diaz: "I am to bring light to the Humans' future! I am to pass judgment on the past of the Winglies! I am Diaz!!"

Liberation Army of Humans: "God Bless Diaz!! God Bless Gloriano!! God Bless Diaz!! God Bless Gloriano!! God Bless Diaz!! God Bless Gloriano!!"

[Rose snaps out of it.]

Dart: "Rose. Is anything wrong?"

Rose: "No, nothing.... Let's move on. We don't need to say here any longer."

[In the court area...]

Rose: "..."

[Rose recalls a conversation from the olden days...]

Diaz: "You, I heard you are going to have a wedding after this battle. There is no nguarantee of coming back alive."

Zieg: "Even if one of us dies, our bonds of affection are forever."

Rose: "Zieg."

Diaz: "Your eyes are already looking at our future! Then I will realize it for you!"

[Back in the present.]

Rose: "..."

Dart: "Sometimes.... I don't know. If you are really the Rose I know...."

Rose: "I am...just me."

Dart: "!?"

[A sword springs to life of its own volition.]

Rose: "Because the Dragoons made an appearance. It seems the souls of the soldiers who died in the Dragon Campaign have awakened."

[The Polter Armor is defeated.]

Rose: "I cannot complain that people bear grudges against me."

o-----o  
| Ch. 3 - 45 - Capital Vellweb VLL1 |  
o-----o

Lloyd: "Here we are at the Capital City Vellweb."

Dart: "The seven towers.... Is Diaz waiting for us somewhere in there?"

Lloyd: "That is the tower of the seven Dragoons. The throne of the Holy Emperor is underneath there."

Albert: "We are standing at the legendary place where Humans began their liberation. I wonder if it is an abominable place as well?"

Meru: "You think too much. It's the same as Kadessa, isn't it? When you drag the past around, you cannot walk anywhere."

Albert: "It is true, Meru. The Forbidden Land that was the royal capital of the Winglies. And this Vellweb is a mere historic ruin."

Dart: "Yes. We can do nothing but settle for the present."

[A ways in...]

Rose: "Dart, look at that huge battery. Humans shot huge arrows from there. Aiming at the Tower of Flanel. And back then, Humans thought this way. 'That the arrow would not only shear the darkness that covers the earth. But also shear their corrupted hearts which were accustomed to being ruled.'"

Dart: "Why are you suddenly starting to say this?"

Rose: "I don't know. I still cannot tell. But if we meet the guy who claims he is Diaz, I think we can find out the reason. I'm speaking nonsense again. Let's keep going. A hero from history is waiting for us."

[Near the Dragoons' tower...]

Shirley: "I have been waiting for you."

Dart: "You are Shirley!?"

Rose: "Why? Why are you here? You ascended to heaven I thought...."

Shirley: "Before that, I had something I had to take care of here in Vellweb. I couldn't leave the trapped souls alone in this world."

Rose: "Are you talking about...?"

Shirley: "Yes. The four souls of the Dragoons who lost their lives during the Dragon Campaign. Their souls were drawn to Mayfil. The gate of the inferno from which you can never return, is requesting the souls of the Dragoons."

Rose: "The Death City Mayfil!? I thought it was destroyed!?"

Shirley: "I don't know how, but it is true that the gate of the inferno is open. Rose, I made their souls inert and anchored them in this place. But there is a limit to my power. After you meet Diaz, please visit this place again. And lead their souls to heaven."

[Shirley disappears.]

Rose: "The souls of the Dragoons are wandering somewhere in the towers. But, we have to take care of something else now. Let's go find Diaz."

[Below, the party finds an area where Shana is.]

Dart: "Shana!!"

[A mysterious force picks her up and bring her over.]

Dart: "!!"

Lloyd: "Diaz. Here are all three Divine Moon Objects. There are no more obstacles to hinder our utopia. Release the girl."

Diaz: "Fine."

[Shana is returned.]

Albert: "Diaz!! What are you going to do with the Divine Moon Objects?"

Diaz: "Didn't you hear it from Lloyd? My only desire is the advent of the last species."

Rose: "If you are the true Diaz, you should know what that implies?"

Diaz: "Total destruction."

Lloyd: "Wha, what do you...?"

Diaz: "Lloyd. Well done bringing me the Moon Gem, Moon Dagger and Moon Mirror. Now we can let the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction, the last species we desire, the true Virage, arise. I will create the utopia you wanted, after the Virage Embryo purges the world."

Rose: "Everything so far was an overture to that. Lloyd. He showed you a false utopia from the beginning."

Lloyd: "You deceived me. My utopia exists in the future of this world. What I desire is the creation of the future! Not the destruction of this world!!"

Diaz: "I don't need you anymore."

Lloyd: "Argh!!"

[Diaz uses magic to slam Lloyd through the floor, down a long, long ways...]

Dart: "Diaz!! What are you thinking!?"

Diaz: "I don't need to hide anymore."

[He takes off his mask.]

Zieg: "It's been awhile, Rose. Dart."

Dart: "Father?"

Rose: "Zieg! Oh, it cannot be!"

Dart: "Is that really you Dad!?"

Rose: "You died!! With Melbu Frahma on each other's swords!!"

Dart: "Rose, what are you talking about?"

Zieg: "Now, I can tell you everything. The beginning of the world was an absolute nothingness...darkness. The Creator Soa sowed a seed to the earth. This is the plan of Soa, that created all species. The birth of the Divine Tree.... Eventually, the fruit of the Divine Tree ripened and fell to the ground to fill the world with life. Gigantos from the 97th fruit. Minitos from the 99th fruit. Dragons from the 105th fruit. Humans from the 106th fruit. Winglies with magic power from the 107th fruit...and at the end, the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction, was to be born from the 108th fruit. Soa desired the destruction and regeneration of the world by the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction. However, 11,000 years ago, Winglies found out the tragedy waiting for them, and sealed the 108th fruit by separating the flesh and soul. The flesh of the god, the flesh of the Virage Embryo was taken away from the Winglies as the Moon That Never Sets that glows in the sky. And the soul of the god was captured in the Crystal Sphere and Melbu Frahma kept it. Yes, to withdraw unlimited magic power from that, and to conquer the other creatures. However, even with unlimited magic power, the domination was not eternal. Humans arose with Dragoons in front. Nothing was their match because they obtained the power of the dragon. And finally, they drove Melbu Frahma into a corner. I felt certain of human...my victory. And it was in the next moment, the spell of petrification cast by Melbu captured me. I have waited for 11,000 years. Time, almost eternal, dissolved the spell of Melbu. And I was released from captivity. Days spent with Rose became the eternal past. And I lived as the father of Dart in this age. Until the tragic day in Neet."

Rose: "I cannot believe it."

Zieg: "I am here, that is a fact."

Dart: "Then, both Dad and Rose...are the heroes of the Dragon Campaign!?"

Zieg: "Yes. But, that's not all. Humans made a mistake. Silly Humans destroyed the Crystal Sphere, which was the container of the soul along with the royal capital Kadessa. The Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction was exultant. It could now be born. The free soul released from the Crystal Sphere started to wander. In order to go back to the body left in the Moon That Never Sets, to be born as the last god, and to destroy the world. The soul without a body possesses a human body and heads for the Moon That Never Sets, by repeating the transmigration every 108 years. You now know. The soul of the God of Destruction is the Moon Child. The truth of the Moon Child in the legend. 'Count 108 years and when the Moon That Never Sets glares in red, the Moon Child descends to the earth and shall give a holy blessing to the world.' The 'Holy blessing' is the destruction. The destruction is Soa's will. This is...the fate that rules the future of the world. But, there was one Dragoon who found out about it. In order to deter the birth of the God of Destruction, she has had to kill the Moon Children. By stopping her own time. She was even called a demon. That is the true self of Rose...the Black Monster!!"

Dart: "Rose is...the Black...Monster?"

Rose: "..."

Dart: "Tell me it's not true!!"

Rose: "The Moon Child has to be killed. And the people around it too, before



they become the servants of the God of Destruction."

Dart: "Neet...too!?"

Rose: "For 11,000 years there have been no exceptions."

Dart: "God!!! Why you!! Why do you have to be the Black Monster!?"

Zieg: "That's it."

[Zieg takes Shana.]

Dart: "What are you going to do!?"

Zieg: "Let me tell you one more truth. Rose, you thought the Princess Louvia you killed 18 years ago was the Moon Child, but it is not true."

Rose: "!?"

Zieg: "Louvia had a twin sister."

Rose: "N, No!!"

Zieg: "Shana is the Moon Child!! Shana is...the soul of the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction!! I'll dissolve the Signet of the Moon That Never Sets, and cross it with the Moon Child. Now, I have everything in my hands."

Dart: "Release Shana!!"

Zieg: "And you are going to kill her? To save the world?"

Rose: "I'll kill her!!"

[Rose is rebuffed.]

Zieg: "This is the limitation of Humans."

Rose: "Zieg!! Why!?"

Zieg: "All is the will of the creator, Soa. My hands start the world, and my hands end the world. Yes! Fate desires it."

Dart: "Dad!! Wait!! Shana!!"

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 46 - Death Frontier DTF1 |  
o-----o

[Following events in Vellweb, the party treks through a large desert region.]

Meru: "I'm totally beaten!"

Albert: "We came all this way and we cannot go back."

Haschel: "Yes we did."

Kongol: "No need to return. The city of Winglies, Rose said, is just over there."

Haschel: "What was it called, Ulara...? I hope we can find out what we should do there."

Meru: "I hope so too."

[In a nearby cave.]

Dart: "Who could imagine there is such a place under the ground of the desert?"

Albert: "It must be a cavity created when the water dried up. The world is going on without knowing anything. Without knowing until the end... I wonder if this little world has experienced an end like that."

Dart: "It is not determined yet that our world will end."

Albert: "That's true. We are still here."

[After awhile, the party encounters an oasis.]

Meru: "Water!"

Haschel: "It's refreshing!"

Kongol: "Here no monster. We can rest now."

Miranda: "What will the Winglies in Ulara know?"

Rose: "They should know the way we, or at least 'I', should take. So, there is no need for you to come."

Miranda: "Are you still saying that? Don't you understand it is no longer a problem for you alone!?"

Rose: "You just found it out a couple of days ago and now you think you can judge me? It is not as easy as pursuing one Wingly."

[Rose gets slapped.]

Miranda: "You, you say it was 'easy'!? Don't be so conceited!"

Albert: "Stop it! It won't lead us anywhere. Rose, nobody can understand the weight of fate you have carried. But we can at least lighten the burden for you."

Dart: "That's why... We are going with you. If you have the strength to argue, we can go on. There is no other way, is there?"

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 47 - Spring Breath Town Ulara SBT1 |  
o-----o

[At the teleporter into the city...]

Rose: "Even if an adventurer is lucky enough to make it through the Death Frontier, nobody can proceed from here. Time was stopped for me 11,000 years ago with the spell of this Choker. And, this is the only way to see Ulara, the Spring Breath Town."

Albert: "But, where is it?"

Haschel: "The only thing here is an endless desert."

Meru: "No, it's not. Haschel, I sense it. I sense people's feelings, over there!"

[Rose's Choker dispels the illusion.]

Rose: "We can fly over there with this. Are you afraid?"

Dart: "I think you are."

Rose: "Maybe."

Dart: "We are standing by you."

Rose: "I know."

Dart: "Let's go."

[They teleport in.]

Caron: "Welcome to Ulara, the Spring Breath Town. I am the guard of the teleporting device, Caron. I'm a good friend of Rose's."

Rose: "Long time no see."

Caron: "'Long time'? Rose, you are starting to regain a sense of time, aren't you? No, not only that. You have recovered a lot of other things too."

Dart: "Are you the person who stopped time for Rose?"

Rose: "No, it was Charle Frahma. She is the person we have to meet now."

Caron: "Rose has been carrying the fate of the world all alone while shedding tears of blood. Can you go with Rose?"

Rose: "Caron, stop it. I don't need to force them."

Dart: "I have already settled things with the Black Monster. The only thing left is that I have to complete this journey with my companions."

Caron: "If you understand that, I have nothing to say."

[In the fountain square...]

Rose: "Miata, where is Charle?"

Miata: "You are wondering because she would normally be taking care of these babies, right? Charle is preparing herself. Because, well, the things we didn't tell you about, right? Zieg told you them, so...."

Rose: "It must be about the Moon Signet. Tell me what you know."

Miata: "The Signet is the...Signet Sphere. The Signet Sphere is a sealing device that was created to be the last barrier, just in case the Moon Child reached the Moon That Never Sets."

Rose: "Even my mistake was in your plan. You are really scary people."

Miata: "Even more scary is Zieg. He is trying to destroy the Signet Sphere."

Using the Divine Moon Objects."

Dart: "Wait a minute. You made the Signet Sphere just because you were afraid of the birth of the God of Destruction. And why did you make tools that can destroy the Signet?"

Miata: "Ask Charle. It was decided between the siblings."

Rose: "I will."

[In another verdant square...]

Dart: "Roses. I think Shana would be happy to see them."

Haschel: "It makes me relieved. I didn't know you liked flowers, Miranda. I guess there is some woman in you."

Miranda: "Don't misread me. Roses make me puke. They are just flashy. They don't have any kindness in them. Do you know why roses have thorns? It is to bring out their own red using the blood of the people they hurt. They'll do anything for their own happiness. Let's move on. I don't need to be here."

[At Charle Frahma's place...]

Charle: "Oh Rosie darling! I have been waiting for you!"

Rose: "I don't need your greetings. You know what I want to ask you."

Charle: "Oh, you are scary. But before that, can you introduce me to the son of dear Zieggy?"

Rose: "This is Dart."

Charle: "Doesn't he look just like our Zieggy? But Rosie honey, it's complicated. You have to fight with the son of someone who used to be your significant other. And furthermore, the enemy is the significant other."

Rose: "Do you want me to give you a knuckle sandwich?"

Charle: "Sorry honey. But I'm really concerned. So I'm intentionally making it happy and delightful so that you won't be depressed, Rosie sweetheart."

Rose: "You have never changed."

Dart: "Charle. If you know, please tell us. Where should we head to?"

Charle: "Really, you have the same eyes as Zieggy.... I know. I have been waiting for you in order to tell you everything. Now, what would you like me to tell you?"

R1 -> About the Signet Sphere.

R2 -> About the Moon That Never Sets.

R3 -> About my father.

R1: "About the Signet Sphere."

Charle: "Zieggy is trying to break the Signet of the Moon That Never Sets with the magic power of the Divine Moon

Objects. That Signet is the Signet Sphere. I am sorry that I didn't tell you about this."

Rose: "I have to apologize. I missed the Moon Child, Shana."

Charle: "But you still have time. The Signet of the Moon That Never Sets is not broken yet."

Dart: "Where are the remaining Signets?"

Charle: "In the past, they were placed in five cities. But there are only three left."

Albert: "That's why they needed the same number of Divine Moon Objects."

Dart: "What happened to the other two?"

Charle: "One was destroyed in the Royal Capital Kadessa during the Dragon Campaign. And the other was lost when the Divine Dragon assaulted the Crystal Palace."

Rose: "Does this mean, without the Divine Moon Objects, the Signet Sphere can be destroyed?"

Charle: "The Divine Moon Objects are just tools that conceal vast amounts of magic power, that's all. So in order to destroy the Signet Sphere, having the same amount of magic power as the Divine Moon Objects is sufficient."

Dart: "My dad knew about this and made Lloyd collect them."

Charle: "It doesn't seem like him, and it's so indirect. Plus, something is strange. I wonder how Zieggy knows about the Signet Sphere?"

Rose: "Not only that. He knew that Shana is the Moon Child."

R2: "About the Moon That Never Sets."

Charle: "It's the 108th fruit that the Divine Tree dropped. It was conceived with the God of Destruction that ends the world. That's why we separated it into its soul and flesh and sealed them away. My baby brother Melbu sealed the soul which was the source of magic power in the Crystal Sphere, but um...when he fought with Zieggy, it was broken. Then the soul escaped from the Crystal Sphere and started to transmigrate into a human body. Since then it has been called the Moon Child. What is left in the sky is the Moon That Never Sets. When the Moon Child goes back to the Moon That Never Sets, the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction will be born. So, we needed our Rosie to take on an important task. Please understand her...."

R3: "Tell me about my father."

Charle: "You are concerned, aren't you?"

Dart: "Why does he have to destroy the world?"

Charle: "Sorry, but that is the one thing that I don't understand."

Rose: "But he was unmistakably Zieg."

Charle: "Ziegggy was the fiance of Rosie. They crossed both swords and love. Just looking at them made me feel embarrassed."

Rose: "Stop right there. I want to talk alone with Zieg about our memories."

Dart: "I agree."

Dart: "Why did you make the Divine Moon Objects that can break the Signet Sphere?"

Rose: "That's right. If you were not planning to allow the Virage Embryo to be born, you wouldn't need them."

Charle: "I didn't want to, but my baby brother Melbu insisted."

Rose: "That is not an explanation, Charle."

Charle: "Oh, you are so uptight. But, okay, I'll explain it to you. I told you that we sealed the soul of the Virage Embryo in the Crystal Sphere, right? It is in order to draw lots of magical power and rule over other species. I...wanted to make him stop being a dictator. Because even though we have different appearances or capabilities, we are the same. We should be able to live together on good terms. That's why I created the Signet Sphere in order to weaken the magic power of the Crystal Sphere. Rose, without telling you that. The five Signets that protect the Moon That Never Sets restrained the magic power that flows from there. My operation was a big success! I thought."

Rose: "But Melbu found out about it and created the Divine Moon Objects."

Charle: "I guess he was prepared so that he could destroy the Signets anytime he wanted to."

Rose: "Hmm. I get it."

Dart: "Where are the rest of the Signets?"

Charle: "That's right. That is the most important information for you isn't it? Because Ziegggy has the Divine Moon Objects and he can break the Signets anytime. Listen carefully. The rest of the three Signet Spheres are located in the ancient cities. The names of the cities are the Magical City Aglis, Law City Zenebatos, and Death City Mayfil."

Rose: "Those cities are still alive?"

Charle: "It's surprising isn't it? Of course they were badly damaged during the war."

Dart: "How do we get there?"

Charle: "Go to Rouge. Then your way will be open."

Haschel: "You said Rouge!? It's my home town!"

Charle: "See, it is already open, isn't it? Well. It'll be night soon. Why don't you go look around until tomorrow morning."

[Everyone disperses.]

Charle: "Oh Dart darling. Are you going outside? Everybody left a little while ago."

[Dart walks outside to the flower square.]

Dart: [Now our way is opened. Shana, I'll be there soon.] "Rose...."

Rose: "You really forgive...."

Dart: "Don't say anything. It's, already in the past."

[Flashback: Death Frontier. Rose and Dart are fighting.]

Dart: "Take your sword."

Rose: "You have become strong. You can take care of yourself. Kill me."

[Dart does not.]

Rose: "Why?"

Dart: "The Black Monster is dead now. We only have.... A companion who is on the same road."

[Back to Ulara, Dart and Rose sit next to each other by the fountain.]

Rose: "I miss the time when you were chased by Feybrand in the forest."

Dart: "Me too. And...I didn't know anything back then. The world is so frail."

Rose: "The world is created so that it can perish at any time. The creator Soa can recreate one anytime. But, the people living there can accept it, believing it is 'fate' or struggle against it. I struggled in order to protect this world that was taken back by friends who gave up their lives."

Dart: "I told you. You are no longer alone, Rose."

Rose: "Dart...."

Dart: "Let's go see everybody. This is just the beginning."

[Dart teleports to the inn.]

Miranda: "It's not true. The reason why I hate roses is because I see my mother in roses. My mother never looked at me directly. It was as if she was hiding something from me. And she beat me up. I didn't know what was going on and why she was doing it to me, but I remember at least one thing. There were always roses on the shelf behind my mother."

Haschel: "Why did your mother leave you?"

Miranda: "Sorry. Let's not talk about me anymore. It spoils our drinks."

Haschel: "I don't think so. It is okay to be this way. Life is not always happy. Listening to your story reminds me of my past."

Miranda: "About your runaway daughter right."

Haschel: "You are so sharp that it hurts."

Miranda: "I hate being roundabout."

Dart: "Oh, you guys are here."

Miranda: "When are we leaving? Haschel has been drinking too much since he heard we are going to Rouge."

Haschel: "That's right! Drink a little more, and let's leave for Rouge at once! Of course to save the world!"

Dart: "Gimme a drink too."

Rose: "May I join? I wanted to talk to you Miranda."

Miranda: "Same here."

[After some hanging out--]

Dart: "Shall we go?"

[At the shop building...]

Albert: "So, we are leaving in the morning."

Dart: "Yes, we are. What are you doing here?"

Kongol: "We don't know what will happen in ancient city of Winglies. We need strong weapon. Kongol doesn't care about leader of creatures. Kongol goes with you to the end."

Albert: "For me too, it is no longer the mere problem of the Moon Gem. I cannot ignore this crisis of the world. You didn't imagine we wouldn't go with you, did you?"

Dart: "I didn't."

Manager of Weapon Shop: "Hurry up if you want to buy. Humans and Giganto, your time is limited."

[At the town entrance...]

Meru: "Hey! Buddies! Caron was telling me about the teleporting device. It's not like back home. And, when are we going? We already heard lots about it from Charle, and we found out where we should go."

Rose: "You are coming too?"

Meru: "Of course! Without me, the strongest of all, you cannot save the world! Besides, I learn a lot following Dart. Everybody's the same, Gigantos, Humans and Winglies. And I can't stand the destruction of a world where everybody lives!"

Rose: "I think for the first time, I agree with Meru."



Meru: "Is this the first time?"

Caron: "Leave here tomorrow morning. By that time, I'll be prepared so that I can send you on the way that goes to the Home of Gigantos from here."

Dart: "We can travel that far instantly. Then we might as well go directly to Rouge."

Caron: "Our power is becoming weaker day by day. That is our maximum power."

Dart: "I understand."

Caron: "Take a boat to Rouge. It should have been prepared in the Twin Castle a short while ago."

Dart: "Was there a dock in that castle?"

Caron: "I asked King Zior and had him make one especially."

Rose: "I'm surprised that he listened to a Wingly."

Caron: "There are no Humans or Winglies when it comes to the end of the world. You don't need to thank us. Now, it is not too much to say that the mission of the city is to send you off."

Rose: "Yes. And this is one way, this city has been looking after the world. Let's go back to Charle. She must have prepared the bedrooms for us."

[The next morning, at the entrance...]

Dart: "Charle, what is this?"

Charle: "Oh naive boy. Don't you understand? It's a send-off for great heroes."

Rose: "You shouldn't have."

Miata: "Don't be so shy."

Charle: "Rosie, honey. You have been doing really great. Since the soul of the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction was released, you have saved the world, let me see, at least 107 times."

Miata: "Really. After even being called a Black Monster."

Rose: "Stop it. The monster has...died."

Charle: "Ziegggy is serious. And, he has everything to give birth to the God of Destruction. Only Dragoons can stop him. I wonder what Creator Soa is thinking. Like destruction or regeneration. I wonder why it wants us to go through such a painful thingy."

Rose: "We will change 'fate'."

Charle: "Everybody must survive, okay?"

Caron: "Now go. Zieg won't wait for us."

Dart: "Right."

[Everyone goes to Home of Giganto.]

Kongol: "Home of Gigantos."

Dart: "It was linked here."

Haschel: "It's been a while."

Meru: "Caron and Gigantos were pals for a long time. Of course, it was when there were still some Gigantos left. There were nice Winglies like Charle."

Miranda: "They weren't all brutal people, unlike the legend tells. We have to rewrite teh book in the National Library."

Albert: "Yes, correct knowledge brings correct conduct."

Dart: "That's after this journey has ended. Let's go see King Zior. We have to head to Rouge on the Queen Fury."

[Everyone boot-scoots to Fletz; the court's waiting for them.]

King Zior: "Dart. I have been waiting for you."

Dart: "What is this...?"

King Zior: "We are seeing you off."

Emille: "We received a messenger from Charle."

Lisa: "Her name was Caron."

King Zior: "Everything is ready for going to Rouge. The world must not be destroyed. Even if it was the intention of the creator, we are all still alive and living. I beg of you. Please save the world. Commodore Puler is waiting for you in the basement. To carry our hope."

Dart: "So long."

[Downstairs...]

Puler: "Oh, you are here!! Everybody looks confident. Although you are going to an unknown land, there is no hesitation or wavering."

Haschel: "Actually, it's my home village..."

Puler: "A man of the sea isn't bothered by those little details! Anyway! We are ready to go! We absolutely have to stop the crazy conspiracy to annihilate the world! However, we should never give up rescuing our loved ones either! Let us be going, Dart! The ocean awaits you!"

Kayla: "The Commodore makes it sound simple, but I assume that this time it will be a long journey, won't it?"

Dart: "Yes."

Kayla: "Then, I think you'd better get what you need from the city and come back."

Dart: "Thank you."

Kayla: "It's okay. I am happy to help you, Dart. Besides.... Please...! Please rescue Shana!"

Albert: "We give you our promise."

Haschel: "Of course we will!"

Kayla: "I'll be waiting for you on the boat!"

Dart: "Let's go."

[Everyone boards the Queen Fury.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 49 - Outland Village Rouge TLV1 |  
o-----o

Kid: "Wow!"

Kid: "Sail ho!"

[Dart's tiny boat makes it to shore.]

Haschel: "It's been a long time. I wonder if anyone remembers me?"

Man: "Ha...Haschel!?"

Haschel: "Yeah! It's me!"

Mayor of Rouge: "Well, it's been, maybe 20 years!? You've been gone for such a long time!! How have you been!?"

Haschel: "I was looking for my runaway daughter, but I gave up on it."

Mayor of Rouge: "Claire huh? That's...I feel sorry to hear that. And who are all these people? Are they your new pupils?"

Haschel: "No, they are my friends. I'd like for you to get to know them. But we don't have time now. I have something important to talk to you about."

Mayor of Rouge: "All right. Come up. I'll listen to you. Come on, get over! The floor's gonna give way!"

[The party goes up to the mayor's pad.]

Haschel: "Hasn't changed a bit, huh?"

Mayor of Rouge: "No kidding. This village is forgotten. We rarely have visitors from the continent."

Fisherman of Rouge: "All we do is fish and sleep, fish and sleep."

Martial Art Master of Rouge: "Practice and sleep and practice and sleep."

Mayor of Rouge: "That's about it. Nothing has changed since Haschel left the village. Say, what's cooking? You came all the way here, must be something important, huh?"

Haschel: "Yup. To be honest, we are looking for the way to the ancient cities.

Mayor of Rouge: "'Ancient cities'? What the heck are they?"

Rose: "Those were towns where the long gone Winglies lived."

Dart: "Do you know anything about them?"

Mayor of Rouge: "Winglies!? What on earth are they!? You lost me!"

Haschel: "You couldn't know. Let me explain."

[Haschel explains it all!]

Mayor of Rouge: "A world crisis!? That's a pretty awful thing then!!"

Haschel: "That's why we are in a hurry."

Dart: "Are there any old ruins around here?"

Rose: "Things that Humans couldn't make."

Fisherman of Rouge: "How about this. There is a stick rising out of the sea.  
Could it be related?"

Martial Art Master of Rouge: "Oh! That thing in the sea! Indeed! Humans  
couldn't have made it!"

Dart: "Where is that?"

Mayor of Rouge: "It's in the middle of the sea. But you can't get close by  
boat, cuz there's an awful whirlpool. But, you can see it  
clearly from the cliff top. Well, it suddenly came up, so  
you wouldn't have known about it."

Haschel: "Shall we try?"

Mayor of Rouge: "Hope it's the one you folks wanna go to."

[Up on the clifftop, a huge mushroom-shaped thing sits in the sea.]

Dart: "That must be what the Mayor was talking about."

Haschel: "There was no 'stick' 20 years ago when I was here."

Meru: "It's huge and more like a tower than a stick."

Albert: "This structure could never be made by Human technology."

Miranda: "Rose, do you know anything about it? You were there once weren't  
you?"

Dart: "That's right, Rose is one of the Dragoons who liberated Humans. Don't  
you remember anything?"

Rose: "Charle said the Signet Spheres remain in the Magic City Aglis, the  
Death City Mayfil, and the Law City Zenebatos. If I remember correctly  
...there was only the Magical City Aglis in this region of the sea.  
Charle must have made us come here because she thinks Zieg will go after

the Signet Sphere of Aglis first."

Meru: "Rose, a question please! What the heck is the 'Law City' or whatever they call it? What do they mean?"

Albert: "I was thinking about that too. The Crystal Palace was called the 'Birth City' too."

Rose: "The Birth City Crystal Palace was a city where babies were selected to be born."

Dart: "'Select' babies?"

Rose: "Those with weak magical power weren't allowed to be born."

Meru: "That's awful."

Rose: "And the Death City Mayfil is where the souls of the dead were sent to an infernal world."

Miranda: "Winglies in the past had even their destination after death decided for them."

Rose: "Do you want to know anything else?"

R1 -> The Forbidden Land

R2 -> Birth City Crystal Palace

R3 -> Death City Mayfil

R4 -> Law City Zenebatos

R5 -> Magical City Aglis

R6 -> Quit

R1: "It was the capital of the Wingly world dominated by Melbu Frahma. It was the center of politics and the military."

Albert: "That's why it was so damaged."

Meru: "That's the reason why it is the Forbidden Land now."

R2: "I already told you. You are hopeless. The Birth City Crystal Palace was the city where babies were selected to be born. Those with weak magic power weren't allowed to be born."

R3: "Don't make me say it again. Didn't you listen to me? The Death City Mayfil was the city where the souls of the dead were sent to an infernal world. Winglies wanted to control even the destination of the soul after death."

R4: "The Law City Zenebatos was the city where Wingly laws were made. Publicly, they claimed it was for justice, but in reality they were laws to judge 'other species.' Also trials and executions were carried out in Zenebatos."

Miranda: "I can easily imagine what kind of trials they were. Gives me the creeps."

R5: "The Magical City Aglis was the city where magic was studied."

Albert: "It is astonishing that even though they had much more magic than now, they still studied it so deeply?"

Meru: "It would never happen now."

Haschel: "You are carefree, Meru."

R6: [See below.]

Haschel: "You really know this stuff."

Dart: "If it is Aglis how can we approach it?"

Rose: "We gotta hurry or Zieg will get there first."

Dart: "Well, we cannot go by boat. We gotta find some other way."

[At the Mirror Room in Aglis the Magical City, someone watches the party...]

Dart: "What's wrong, Rose?"

Rose: "We were being watched by somebody."

Dart: "'Being watched'?"

Rose: "!!"

Haschel: "!!"

[The ground starts to shake.]

Haschel: "What's going on!?"

Mayor of Rouge: "Th, the sea is splitting!"

Dart: "Let's go!"

[Back at the clifftop, the sea has indeed split towards Aglis, which has now increased in size.]

Dart: "What is that!?"

Rose: "The Magical City Aglis revealed itself."

Mayor of Rouge: "Haschel!! Is that what you were looking for!?"

Haschel: "It seems like it! Thank god that it found us!"

Miranda: "Now, we can go in before Zieg!"

Dart: "Let's go!"

[They return to the boat dock.]

Boat Pop: "No kidding! Ya folks are gonna put to sea, aren't ya!?"

R1 -> ...

R2 -> We are going to go.

R1: "..."

R2: "We are going to go."

Boat Pop: "Don't ya know there's going on!? The sea's split and weird stuff appeared!"

Dart: "That's why we are here."

Boat Pop: "Ya folks are insane!!"

Dart: "Oh my god! There is a road formed on the bottom of the sea! It's true.  
If we take a boat, we can walk from midway..."

R1 -> Return to Rouge

R2 -> Go to the Queen Fury

R3 -> Go to Aglis the Magical City

R1: "We don't know what we will find. We have to be very prepared."

R2: "Should we go back to the Queen Fury for now."

R3: "There is no need to hesitate. Let's go into Aglis!"

[Everyone goes to Aglis.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 50 - Magical City Aglis MCA1 |  
o-----o

[The party arrives in Aglis.]

Dart: "What's going on here?"

Meru: "Magic. Somebody's supportin' this with magic!"

Albert: "It seems we are invited."

Dart: "It's convenient for us."

Miranda: "We have no reason to say no."

Rose: "This door is not locked either. Dart, you go ahead and open it. Zieg will come here. To destroy the Signet Sphere. You will have to finally settle things. So I want you to open the first door."

[Inside...]

Meru: "This is the bottom of the sea!"

Haschel: "What a great view. It's worth waiting a long...."

Miranda: "Don't forget we are invited by somebody. Otherwise this will be the last view we see."

Albert: "But, it's incredible magic, creating this much space in the water."

Rose: "This city originally was not in such a suffocating place. All the Wingly cities used to float in the air. So it was easier to control the creatures below. And, that's how it was until we shot them down."

Dart: "With my dad."

Rose: "Yes, Zieg and me, and five other Dragoons together."

Dart: "11,000 years passed since then and now we are here. Being here to protect the Signet Sphere. It feels strange to me."

[The room shakes.]

Dart: "What's going on!?"

Kongol: "Sea closed."

Dart: "What!? They don't want us to go back!"

Rose: "They are playing hardball with us."

[In the next screen, a little dog-thing is walking around.]

Dart: "What's this?"

Ruff: "Ruff has been in here forever, ruff. I only know the view and sound in here, ruff."

Miranda: "It doesn't seem to be harmful."

Ruff: "It's rough, ruff. Ruff doesn't want to say anything, but it's a message so that it's rough, ruff. 'Welcome to the seven heroes fated to be here. And Rose, these thousands of years I have waited were neither as long as eternity nor as short as a mere twinkle of a star. People who confront their fate with courage....' I forgot the rest."

Rose: "How do you know my name?"

Dart: "Whose message is this?"

Ruff: "Ruff only knows what Ruff hears, ruff. Ruff doesn't know anything else, ruff."

Miranda: "Are you on Zieg's side? Answer me, or I'm gonna mess you up!"

Ruff: "'Mess you up'? Ruff has never seen it and doesn't know, ruff. Show it to Ruff. It should be some rough stuff, ruff."

Meru: "Hey, Miranda! This baby didn't do anything! Sorry we scared you. Oh. This baby's made by magic!"

Rose: "By 'magic'? There wasn't even such technology during the Dragon Campaign."

Meru: "You gotta believe this cuz it's right in front of our eyes. But, this baby's totally cute!"

Ruff: "Ruff is cute? Then you all are not cute, ruff. But, Rose is exception, ruff."

Rose: "If you are gonna treat me as an exception, why don't you take me to the Signet Sphere?"

Ruff: "It's your own challenge to go by yourself, ruff. All is for the sake of the Psychedelic Bomb and Moot, ruff. Ruff is going, ruff. It's rough, ruff."

[Ruff leaves.]

Dart: "Well.... We gotta go anyway."

[Everyone finds a lab area eventually where Ruff lookalike is.]



Phewy: "Sorry, phew. We are busy preparing the Psychedelic Bomb and Moot, phew. Sorry, phew."

Ruff: "It's all in the message by Ruff. Disturbing our work is too rough, ruff."

Rose: "It's been a while since I last came here. Don't you think you should be nice to me and tell me more?"

Ruff: "Ruff has nothing to tell you, ruff. Ruff has something else to do, ruff."

Phewy: "Sorry, phew. We are magic creatures, phew. We have different roles, phew."

Dart: "What are you doing here?"

Phewy: "Preparing the Psychedelic Bomb and Moot, phew. You can complete it, Phew. You can become the source of power, phew. Sorry, phew. He is coming, phew. I have to make it in time, phew. Remember your courage, phew."

Dart: "'He'!?"

Rose: "Let's go. They irritate me."

[A ways further in...]

Dart: "It's a magic creature again."

Spino: "Don't be mean, pino. It's just a message, pino."

Rose: "Gimme a break. Is everything like this in here?"

Spino: "It's rose, pino. You are in the mirror, Rose, pino. It's Rose who got friends and is in the mirror, pino."

Rose: "Stop speaking in riddles. If you have a message just say it."

Spino: "Don't be mean, pino. Savan said, pino. 'Zenebatos, which governs the rightful law, has lot its reason, and Mayfil, which governs over noble death, has been toyed with by devils of the infernal world.' This city is no exception. My magic power is deteriorating and cannot prevent the invasion by monsters anymore. The only saving grace is my...this city's objective is about to be completed. You are the key. I have been waiting for you for thousands of years. Come, before he comes.'"

Dart: "Savan. As if he knows everything."

Rose: "We will find out."

[In a chamber in the depths of Aglis...]

Savan: "The time has come. The foreseen evil is approaching. But my wish is now hereby accomplished after an eternity. I am Savan. I am a Wingly fated to wait. The Signet Sphere you are looking for is safe. It is protected by Last Kraken."

Dart: "You know everything!?"

Savan: "I know that there is no time left as well."

Rose: "Who are you? What are you going to do...no, what are you going to make us do?"

Savan: "I survived the Dragon Campaign and continued studying magic to reconstruct a Wingly world. Yes, even making myself ageless and immortal. However, the world outside the mirror hasn't required me. The world of Wingly is no longer desired. I, an immortal body with no purpose. 4000 years of solitude deprived me of everything. Even the significance of life and the meaning of death. But 7000 years ago, I was saved by Rose. I found the meaning of life in the Black Monster in the mirror. Rose, who now is confronting her fate. I restarted my study for Rose. And its crystallization is this Psychedelic Bomb and Moot. We will stop the murderous deeds of Zieg, who continues the plan of the creator, by using the attacking spell, the Psychedelic Bomb. And with Moot, we will completely seal the Moon That Never Sets."

Rose: "That is the answer to the riddle. No wonder it takes several thousand years."

Savan: "Moot will be completed soon. But, in order to activate the Psychedelic Bomb, I need the Courage of all of you."

Dart: "Our 'courage'?"

Savan: "It seems that my courage alone is not enough. THE Psychedelic Bomb didn't work. I guess I don't have any courage."

Meru: "That's not true! You have courage, Savan!"

Haschel: "Yes, you have been fighting alone for thousands of years."

Miranda: "But now, we are here with you."

Albert: "Yes. Our intention is the same."

Savan: "You have to endure your own challenge. And we will pour the 'courage' that is born from them into the Psychedelic Bomb and activate it. When you are ready, come to me. Are you ready?"

R1 -> No, not yet.

R2 -> Yes, we are.

R1: "No, not yet."

Savan: "We don't have time. That man would do anything to destroy the Signet Sphere."

R2: "Yes, we are."

Lulu: "Let me tell ya! Lots of the world's magic was created here!"

Savan: "But, the newborn magic is a mere hunk of materials. Without heart, the real power cannot be employed. But we have here brave people who can remain just, and have the heart to bring completion to the ultimate magic. Please ignite the Psychedelic Bomb with your courage. Now, proceed to the chamber of challenges!

[Everyone goes to a teleporter and leaves, but Dart.]

Savan: "You are the last. Please be here with me till then."

Lulu: "At last, we're speaking."

Savan: "No, this will be the end of my role. My fate of waiting as well. Shall we start the first challenge?"

R1 -> Hold on.

R2 -> Okay.

R1: "Hold on."

Lulu: "Hurry up or Zieg will come. Then in order to protect the Signet Sphere, Last Kraken and Zieg have to fight."

R2: "Okay."

[The first challenge is for Kongol. Rose appears behind him.]

Rose: "It seems like it's just us. Why don't we fight for starters? Are you scared just because you lost many times? Or is the cheap pride of a Giganto stopping you?"

Kongol: "Kongol and Rose changed. Rose doesn't say such things. You are not Rose."

Rose: "Then die."

[She disappears and Doel appears.]

Emperor Doel: "Don't tell me you are buddying up with your enemy.""

Kongol: "!!"

Emperor Doel: "You fool! What happened to my plan, the unification of Endiness!? Have you found the leader who replaced me!?"

R1 -> Swing your axe.

R2 -> Take Doel's sword.

R1: [He swings the axe and Doel disappears. Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "He avoided it."

Savan: "Don't be hard on him. Avoiding the past itself is hard enough."

R2: [Kongol knocks his sword away.]

Kongol: "Emperor Doel, Kongol got new feeling. Kongol found new friends. Intention of Emperor Doel is in Kongol. Kongol won't avoid Emperor Doel."

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "We saw the courage of a Giganto."

Savan: "Real courage can be obtained when a person is released from the bonds of the past."

[The second challenge is for Miranda. Buckle's there too.]

Miranda: "I see. You are giving me a challenge. Let's get it over with."

Buckle: "Don't be so hasty uck. Miranda, you are hasty, have a short temper and are hopelessly annoying, uck. You really have a short temper, uck. I have a question for annoying Miranda, uck. 'Why are you here?'"

R1 -> For my friends

R2 -> For the world

R3 -> For Queen Theresa

R1: "To help my friends."

R2: "For the world..."

R3: "For Queen Theresa...."

Buckle: "I asked the wrong question, all were right, uck. Buckle lost, uck. Miranda won, uck. I lost so that Buckle die, uck."

Miranda: "What are you talking about?"

Buckle: "Without Buckle, this space cannot exist. You die too, Miranda."

Miranda: "Where am I? Buckle! Answer me!"

Buckle: "You still don't understand uck? Buckle and Miranda died uck."

Miranda: "Don't tell me I died!! I am still alive! Look! I still have my hands and feet!"

Buckle: "To die is to vanish, uck. Now, Miranda vanishes, uck. Same as Buckle, uck."

Miranda: "Wh, what kind of trick is this!? What did you do with my body!?"

Buckle: "Miranda has done enough uck. So that you vanish with Buckle, uck. Are you scared uck? Afraid uck? Wanna cry uck?"

R1 -> I am ready for death anytime!

R2 -> I cannot die now.

R1: "I am ready for death anytime! I don't fear death!"

Buckle: "You are still annoying uck. Zieg is going to destroy the Signet Sphere. Is it okay to die uck?"

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "Miranda shouldn't die now."

Savan: "Only those who accomplish the mission are ready for death. It's too early for her."

R2: "I cannot die now. I haven't done anything yet! I cannot die if terror remains in the world!"

Buckle: "Miranda is revived uck. Buckle is revived too uck."

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "Buckle's mean."

Savan: "The person who knows the time of their own death has real courage. Hmm. That means, I too have...."

[The third challenge is for Albert.]

Minister Noish: "Your Majesty Albert! It's an emergency!"

Albert: "Minister Noish, why are you here?"

Minister Noish: "I was called by Mr. Savan! Serdio is in danger!"

Albert: "Tell me more."

Minister Noish: "The mysterious eastern tribe is deploying an army around the border. In cowardice they took advantage of your absence, King! Return to Indels Castle at once. Your people are waiting for you to come back, Your Majesty."

R1 -> I understand.

R2 -> I...cannot do that.

R1: "I understand. I will return as soon as possible."

Lulu: "What about Dart and friends?"

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "Being a king is a hard job."

Savan: "Albert is a king who has to protect the people of Serdio. But Albert now is one of the Dragoons who save the world in crisis as well."

Lulu: "That's the difficult point."

Savan: "The real leader has to be able to weigh the effects of a death. That is the courage of a King."

R2: "I...cannot do that."

Minister Noish: "Wh, Why!?"

Albert: "I am a Dragoon, before I am a King. Minister Noish, please attend to the matter of the invasion by the eastern tribe. Do everything possible to avoid a fight."

Lulu: "That's right. Don't worry, there is no such thing as an eastern tribe."

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "That's our King."

Savan: "Albert had to weigh the world's crisis against his people's. But making cruel choices is the responsibility of a king. The real leader has to be able to weigh the effects of a death. That is the courage of a king."

[The fourth challenge is with Meru.]

Meru: "Nothing is here. Boring."

[Bardel appears.]

Meru: "Bardel!? Why are you here!?"

Younger Bardel: "I came back from the infernal world to get revenge for my sister!"

[Guaraha stops him.]

Younger Bardel: "Are you interrupting me Guaraha!?"

Meru: "Guaraha?"

Guaraha: "You told me, Meru. You would come back to settle the matter of his sister after the journey. So, you cannot die here."

Younger Bardel: "Make amends with your death!! My sister admired you! How can you still live after taking the life of my sister!?"

R1 -> I...

R2 -> I still cannot die!

R1: "I...."

Lulu: "You cannot make amends when you die."

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "Poor Meru."

Savan: "But this is her challenge. Death does not make amends. 'Making amends' only exists in life. And it requires courage."

R2: "I still cannot die! I cannot do anything if I die! Even make amends!"

Lulu: "It was tough, wasn't it."

[Elsewhere...]

Lulu: "Poor Meru."

Savan: "Death does not make amends. 'Making amends' only exists in life. We surely saw the courage of Meru who knew and chose to live."

[The fifth challenge is with Haschel.]

Haschel: "The completion of magic requires both the material and heart of the person who uses it. It is like raising disciples...."

[Haschel remembers running off his daughter.]

Haschel: "What is this?"

Lulu: "And Claire left Rouge. I saw it through the mirror with Spino. If you could erase all your memories and could go back to that moment, could you stop Claire?"

R1 -> I could stop her.

R2 -> I couldn't stop her.

R1: "I could stop her."

Lulu: "But, it would be the same. Because the Haschel 'then' is the 'then.'"

[Elsewhere...]

Savan: "You cannot change your past. Accepting the past...it shows courage, too."

R2: "I couldn't stop her. It was the best I could do."

Lulu: "That's right."

[Elsewhere...]

Savan: "Accepting the past...it shows courage, too."

[The sixth challenge is for Rose.]

Savan: "I would often think about it. The thing we are doing, namely Charle creating the Signet Sphere to seal the Moon That Never Sets, and Rose continuously killing the Moon Child. I prepared for the coming evil day with a new signet, Moot, and the Psychedelic Bomb. And waited until the moment. The road to destruction laid by the creator Soa was supposed to be absolute. But evolution was stopped by us, Winglies. I would often think about it. Whether our deeds were the right thing. And will continue forever. I am afraid. Whether I will be myself until the day my body perishes and becomes dust. Will our intention be engulfed by the intention of the creator Soa eventually? Is everything meaningless?"

Rose: "You go too far. We are neither immortal, nor gods. We are mere people. People should just live in the present. Because it means living for the 'next' present. I have been that way. And I won't change. When is my challenge?"

[The sixth challenge ends.]

TEXT GOES HERE.

[The seventh challenge is for Dart.]

Dart: "Shana, is this an illusion?"

Lulu: "It's the possibility of the future."

Dart: "The sword!! I, I cannot control my body. What...did you do to me!?"

Lulu: "You have to take up swords against Shana."

Dart: "Stop it!!"

Lulu: "Shana is the Moon Child that gives birth to the God of Destruction, as well as being Dart's significant other. If you have to take up swords against Shana, what are you gonna do?"

R1 -> I will save Shana no matter what!

R2 -> What should I do!?

R1: "I will save Shana no matter what!"

Lulu: "That's courage."

[Elsewhere...]

Savan: "The courage to pursue your love will change even fate."

R2: "What should I do?"

Lulu: "You don't have courage."

[Elsewhere...]

Savan: "Without courage to pursue your love, you cannot escape from fate."

[After all challenges have been completed.]

Miranda: "Savan went ahead to see the results."

Meru: "I hope our courage will be able to make the Psychedelic Bomb."

Haschel: "It's the creation from thousands of years of effort by Savan. We have a huge responsibility."

Albert: "We obtained an unexpected ally. Now, we can wait for Zieg at the Signet Sphere. We all know what this means don't we?"

Dart: "If we can stop my dad in this city, the world will be saved. That's it. Let's go. Savan's waiting."

[They go to Savan.]

Savan: "Look! The courage of all of you is adding up! The new magic will be born! Give me your hands! Give me your hands to save the world!"

Dart: "This is the Psychedelic Bomb?"

#####  
[If you did all challenges correctly:]

Savan: "Oh...my god!! It is exceeding the limit!!"

Dart: "Did I fail!?"

Savan: "Don't worry! It's not a bad thing! Your courage was too strong!!  
#####

Savan: "My [ultimate] magic is now completed."

Ruff: "Savan, at last I finished the preparation of Moot, ruff. It was rough, ruff."

Phewy: "Our efforts will pay off, phew. Magic power as strong as the Signet Spheres is gathered in Moot, phew."

Savan: "It seems we made it in time."



Dart: "Does this mean we can stop my father's plan?"

Ruff: "As long as Zieg doesn't destroy Moot, ruff."

Phewy: "It's okay, phew. The strongest of all magic creatures, Last Kraken is guarding it phew."

Savan: "Let's activate Moot at once. We will put a new seal on the Moon That Never Sets." [Acquired Psychedelic Bomb/Psychedelic Bomb X]

[They go to Moot's chamber.]

Savan: "Let me show it. This is the Signet Sphere that has continued to seal the Moon That Never Sets, the flesh of the God of Destruction, the evil fruit that is settled in the sky.... And this is Last Kraken. A magic creature that was born to guard the Signet Sphere. But we have you. It may not be needed."

Lulu: "And Moot will start working."

Dart: "That red light is Moot, the new Signet."

Savan: "Yes. When Moot is activated and the new Signet covers the Moon That Never Sets, the ambitions of that man will be terminated. What is going on!?"

[The room shakes.]

Zieg: "That was a poor introduction of me."

Rose: "The voice. It's you Zieg!"

Dart: "Dad! Where are you!?"

Zieg: "In front of you."

Savan: "Don't tell me, it's been manipulated!?! It cannot be!"

Rose: "Yes it is. It is controlling the heart of Last Kraken! Zieg! Are you saying the 10,000 years of rest brought you magic power!?"

Zieg: "Yes. Isn't it an astonishing evolution? Eventually, I will go beyond everything."

Dart: "Father, tell me! Why do you need to annihilate the world!?"

Zieg: "Because it is the intention of the Creator Soa. And now, it is my intention as well. Dart, are you not only pointing a sword against your own father, but also, pointing a sword against Soa, who created you? And Savan, don't you think it is a waste to stop the birth of a god by disobeying the intention of Soa? You are all silly. It seems the Moon Mirror that Lloyd struggled to get was not necessary. Go, Last Kraken! Destroy the Signet Sphere along with this city!!"

Dart: "Everybody, we gotta stop him!! I won't let you have your way, father!!"

[They defeat Last Kraken.]

Lulu: "Danger, Danger!!" <- This is repeated

Savan: "The Signet Sphere is resonating with the runaway reaction of Moot."

Dart: "Why!? We prevented the attack of Last Kraken!"

Savan: "I got it. The field of power generated by the Dragoons triggered the runaway reaction. Sorry, I'll teleport you!"

[Savan teleports them out of the room.]

Dart: "Savan!! You have to come too!"

Savan: "I will see this til the end. You should hurry to the next city, the Signet Sphere of Aglis is now being destroyed."

Dart: "Are you starting it alone? And ending it alone too!!"

Savan: "Even if my body vanishes, my heart will remain. It will give you wings to fly the sky, to the Moon That Never Sets, where Zieg is heading."

Rose: "I still have something to ask you!"

Savan: "Rose, I am grateful. Rose, you...were...my...."

[An explosion takes place and Savan stops talking.]

Rose: "We have no time for being sad."

[They backtrack to the room where Savan gave challenges...]

Miranda: "Buckle. You are!?"

Buckle: "Miranda, you are still annoying, uck. Are other people safe, uck?"

Miranda: "Don't say anything."

Buckle: "Savan died. Buckle and other creatures cannot live without Savan, uck."

Miranda: "Can't we do something for you? Can't you be saved with the Dragoon's power!? Answer me!!"

Buckle: "Be quiet, uck. Good night, uck."

Miranda: "Are you playing dead again!? Give me a break!!"

Buckle: "We can meet again soon, uck. Closing...my eyes...and soon, uck..."

[Buckle dies. In the first laboratory...]

Decal: "Dart, Decal's time is stopping, cal. I cannot roll anymore, cal."

Spino: "But, before that, you must...see, pino."

[Zieg is on the mirror Savan looked at previously.]

Dart: "Dad, what are you doing!?"

Rose: "The Moon Mirror is broken!?"

Spino: "Because the Signet Sphere of Aglis was destroyed. He doesn't need it

anymore, pino. Zieg is in the Law City Zenebatos, pino. Go hurry, pino.

Dart: "But how can we go?"

Decal: "We connected the teleport device, cal. Please keep rolling for Decal, cal."

[They both die.]

Rose: "He's dead. He opened our road with his last power."

Dart: "We won't waste your death."

[Everyone returns to the initial locked door.]

Rose: "This must be the door to the teleport device Decal was talking about."

Meru: "It looks like the one in my forest."

Rose: "This can take us to Zenebatos instantly. It's completely different."

Albert: "Winglies had such astonishing magic power, moving between cities instantly like this."

Haschel: "It's astonishing all right, but I cannot accept life being generated by magic."

Miranda: "Me neither. It's too depressing to be born just to do one thing."

Dart: "The Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction, was born for destruction only. Its existence might have the same sorrow."

Rose: "Then let's try to make it feel better. By making sure it'll never be born. We gotta protect the next Signet Sphere."

Dart: "Let's go to the Law City Zenebatos."

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 51 - Law City Zenebatos LCZ1 |  
o-----o

[Everyone arrives in the dismal city after teleporting in.]

Dart: "So this is the Law City Zenebatos."

Rose: "It is the city where the legislation and administration of the world of the ancient Winglies were carried out."

Haschel: "It's an austere place. It seems like a place Albert would love."

Albert: "Yes, I have a great interest in the way in which they managed their nations. However, I don't think I can learn anything from such a mess."

Miranda: "It fell more than 10,000 years ago."

Guard Lapto 11: "WARNING. WARNING. WARNING. WARNING. WARNING. WARNING.  
ZENEBATOS IS UNDER MARTIAL LAW. LEAVE THE CITY AT ONCE."

Rose: "Good for you Albert. It seems that Zenebatos is still alive."

Guard Lapto 11: "WARNING. INVADED BY HUMANS. TAKE SHELTER IN KADESSA PROMPTLY.  
WARNING. WARNING. WARNING. WARNING."

[It leaves.]

Albert: "However, unfortunately it doesn't seem to be functioning."

Dart: "Are those generated by magic too?"

Meru: "It seems like it. But it's different from Buckle. There is no heart in it."

Rose: "It is just like Zieg now."

Meru: "Hey guys! There is something coming this way!"

Dart: "Wh, What's this?"

Coolon: "I am Coolon. I'll be your wings."

Rose: "Savan was talking about it in his last moments. 'Wings that can fly the skies will be given'. It was about you."

Coolon: "Rose and people who are carrying the world. Although Savan couldn't accomplish his objectives, he fulfilled his role at the expense of his life. Now, everything is on you."

Dart: "I know. I will stop my father. And fulfill Savan's will."

Coolon: "I'll be here waiting for you. Whenever you would like to go back to the world, I'll be your wings."

[Down the way...]

Guilde Lapto 04: "WARNING. UNDER MARTIAL LAW, VISITATION ALLOWED ONLY TO LEGISLATION CENTER, LAW FACTORY, AND LAW LAUNCHER. GREAT COURT, RESIDENCIAL AREA, POWER ROOM ARE OFF-LIMITS."

Dart: "Can't we go to the place where the Signet Sphere is?"

GUILDE LAPTO 04: "IMPOSSIBLE. THE LAW PROHIBITS HUMANS FROM GOING TO THE SIGNET SPHERE. IMPOSSIBLE THE LAW PROHIBITS HUMANS FROM GOING TO THE SIGNET SPHERE."

Albert: "It seems it is a waste of time to talk to them. Let's focus on how we can proceed."

Dart: "Okay."

Albert: "It seems we can decide the destination with this operation counter?"

Guide Lapto 04: "DETERMINE THE DESTINATION."

[Through a long process, the party makes Signet Sphere law amended.]

Guide Lapto 00: "THE LAW PROHIBITS HUMANS FROM GOING TO THE SIGNET SPHERE."

Dart: "I know that. But it should be revised now."

Guide Lapto 00: "NO REVISION HAS BEEN RECEIVED."

Meru: "Hey you, can't you be more flexible? Maybe my spell is not that strong, but I'm here, why don't you let us go."

Guide Lapto 00: "THE LAW PROHIBITS HUMANS FROM GOING TO THE SIGNET SPHERE."

Haschel: "A world crisis is near at hand!!"

Guide Lapto 00: "NO INTEREST IN 'World Crisis'. INTEREST ONLY IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE LAW."

[A messenger arrives.]

Guide Lapto 00: "WINGLY CODE ARTICLE 703 REVISED. ENFORCED IMMEDIATELY. THE LAW DOES NOT PROHIBIT NON-WINGLIES FROM GOING TO THE SIGNET SPHERE."

Meru: "It says 'DOES NOT PROHIBIT'!"

Albert: "It seems the produced law is launched, arrives and then is enforced."

Miranda: "They are treating laws as if they are commodities."

Rose: "That's all it was anyway. The law was a mere tool to judge other creatures for them...the Winglies."

Dart: "We spent too much time with that tool. We gotta get to the Signet Sphere before my father."

[They take the hoverdisc to the Great Court.]

Guide Lapto 01: "YOU ARE AT THE FLYING DISC STATION OF THE GREAT COURT."

Dart: "The Signet Sphere should be in here."

Guide Lapto 01: "SIGNET SPHERE. SIGNET SPHERE. SIGNET SPHERE. SIGNET SPHERE. DART, ROSE, ALBERT, HASCHEL, MERU, KONGOL, AND MIRANDA. TOTAL SEVEN. CONFIRMED ACCUSED."

Dart: "'ACCUSED'? What is it saying?"

Guide Lapto 01: "YOU ARE AT THE FLYING DISC STATION OF THE GREAT COURT."

Dart: "It's a waste to ask."

[At the Great Court...]

Dart: "Where are we?"

Rose: "It's the court of Zenebatos. It is the place where judgment was passed for Non-Winglies under the name of fake justice. And still now...."

Laptos: "GUILTY, GUILTY, GUILTY, GUILTY" <- repeated over and over

Nomos: "MY NAME IS NOMOS. I AM THE JUSTICE. MY WORD IS THE ONLY TRUTH."

Dart: "We are here to protect the Signet Sphere! Let us go through here!"

Nomos: "ACCUSED DART, ROSE, ALBERT, HASCHEL, MIRANDA, MERU, AND KONGOL."

Rose: "It seems you know we are here for the Signet Sphere. And you are trying to intervene. Why?"

Nomos: "ACCUSATION. THE WILL OOOOOOOOOF THE CREATOR SOAAAAAAAAAAAA...."

Rose: "It's not working."

Dart: "Oh no!! Is it being manipulated by my father?"

Nomos: "THUS THE DEATH PENALTY IS SENTENCED!! COME OUT!! WINGED EXECUTIONERS!! VECTOR, SELEBUS, KUBILA!! START THE EXECUTION!!"

[The party kills the executioners.]

Nomos: "MASTER, HURRY TO THE GOD. REBELS AGAINST SOA'S WILL OVERCOME ME."

[Nomos disappears.]

Rose: "The Signet Sphere is over there!"

Dart: "Let's go!!"

[At the Signet Sphere...]

Dart: "The Signet Sphere!!!"

Rose: "He's done it. It is losing its magic power, this Moon Dagger is serving as proof."

Dart: "How on earth did he get here!? !!"

Zieg: "Now, the sky is one of my roads too."

Dart: "Father!!"

Zieg: "Can you hear the movements of the God of Destruction? As if a hymn to the new world."

Rose: "It sounds like an outcry of the world to me!"

Zieg: "With the 'outcry', Shana will be reborn to the god who no longer knows you!"

Dart: "AAAARRRRGGGGHHH!!"

[Dart gets knocked away by Zieg.]

Zieg: "She desires that too."

Dart: "She does not!!"

Zieg: "You'll see when you meet her. But for Shana, you are a mere object to be destroyed."

Dart: "Wait!!"

[Zieg flies off.]

Rose: "He is not Zieg."

Albert: "Then who is he?"

Dart: "We will find it out in the city of the last Signet Sphere. I will in Mayfil!"

[They return to their 'wings.']

Coolon: "Where is the destination?"

Dart: "Please to go Mayfil! Dad must be heading there!"

Coolon: "The sky over Mayfil is filled with swirling souls. I don't think I can make it with my newborn wings."

Dart: "What!? Then how should we go?"

Coolon: "You should be able to go with the teleporting device."

Dart: "Okay!"

-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 52 - Death City Mayfil DCM1 |  
-----o

[Zieg flies in.]

Zieg: "...! Over 11,000 years and it still leads souls to hell. Maybe, it is connected to the Devildom. But, it doesn't matter now. The plan determined by Soa will drink everything to the last drop."

[He continues on. Dart's team arrives later.]

Dart: "Rose, what's that?"

Rose: "When there were still Winglies here, they used to suck souls from all over the world into that huge tower. So they could decide the destination of their souls. But, why?"

Albert: "You want to say it should have been destroyed during the Dragon Campaign, don't you?"

Haschel: "Both Aglis and Zenebatos were working. It shouldn't be that strange."

Rose: "But we destroyed this place completely, so that they could never play with souls. But maybe this is.... Do the souls that couldn't completely die gather here?"

Dart: "I don't like this."

Rose: "But, whatever happens as long as the moon is in the sky, we are fine. The Signet Sphere is still safe."

Dart: "Hurry up. We have to get there before Dad."

[In the next room, a Dragon is shown.]

Albert: "This is the soul of Feyrbrand, the Green Tusked Dragon."

Dart: "That is Feyrbrand!?"

Rose: "It came out in response to the Dragoon Spirit of Albert."

Dart: "You said souls that couldn't completely die gather here. Is it the same for Dragons?"

Rose: "Yes, probably the defeat by Humans, who were supposed to be less powerful than them, became a burden on their soul. If we kill it again, we can probably break the attachment."

Dart: "But we don't have time to deal with them."

Rose: "No, we don't. I feel sorry, but.... We have to catch up with Zieg, or the world will end."

[When passing through a weird room with souls...]

Dart: "Rose!?"

Rose: "Don't come here."

Soul: "The Black Monster. Finally you are dead. Like me. Like me. Like us."

Rose: "Hate me if you want, but I cannot die now." (Please wait until everything is over.)

[Further on...]

Dart: "We have come a long way, but where is the Signet Sphere? What's wrong?"

Rose: "There is something over there."

????: "GWWWWARRRRGGGHH!"

[The soul of Lavitz appears.]

Dart: "You, you are...no way."

Albert: "Yes, it is possible in this city!!"

Dart: "Lavitz!!"

Lavitz: "It's been a while, Your Majesty Albert."

Albert: "I knew it was you!"

Lavitz: "Your Majesty Albert, I have the honor of seeing your face again. And Dart...while we have been apart, you have become strong."

Dart: "Yeah. Since you left us, we have encountered many enemies."

Lavitz: "'Enemies'. That's why there are so many souls that know you."

Dart: "...?"

Lavitz: "Souls that are attracted here remain with a variety of thoughts. That's why they are attracted by the gate of hell. Negative thoughts, attachments are the favorites of the devils from hell."

Rose: "And those devils are driving Mayfil aren't they?"



Lavitz: "Rose, there are many souls who know you. Yes, there are countless...."

Dart: "Lavitz, tell me! Why have you appeared in front of us!?"

Albert: "Maybe.... Are you helping us out!?"

Lavitz: "ARRGGHHH...! ARRGGGGHH!"

Dart: "Lavitz!?"

Lavitz: "Don't come near me."

Dart: "!!!"

[He transforms into some weird visage.]

Ghost Lavitz: "Get out of here!!!"

[He teleports out.]

Rose: "He was talking about the 'devils'. I wonder if one of them is playing with the soul of Lavitz?"

Dart: "What!?"

Rose: "I cannot think of anything other than that."

Albert: "Unforgivable!"

[They follow the ghost.]

Dart: "Lavitz, why did you run away from us!?"

Ghost Lavitz: "Who, who are you bastards?""

Dart: "!? It's me, Dart!"

Ghost Lavitz: "Dart."

Albert: "Don't you recognize us!?"

Ghost Lavitz: "Majesty...Albert. ARGH...! ARGHAAA...!!!"

Rose: "Look at the back of Lavitz. There is something attached. It seems that is affecting the soul. It smells of Devildom."

Ghost Lavitz: "GGGWWAAAAAHHHHHH!!!"

[The party defeats Lavitz.]

Zackwell: "Hee hee hee hee hee! What a show! It was so moving a reunion that I'm totally choked with tears"

Dart: "Who...who are you?"

Zackwell: "Oh, excuse me. My name is Zackwell. I am a resident of the darkness"

Dart: "You have taken over Lavitz!!!"

Zackwell: "Yes I have. The man insisted he was so worried about you that he"

couldn't bear dying. I thought it was a little presuming, but I granted him momentary life."

Dart: "You!! Lavitz was my friend! How dare you! You will never get away with this!!"

Zackwell: "Oh, can you defeat me? Hee hee hee hee hee hee."

[They defeat Zackwell, but the weird object attaches to Lavitz again.]

Albert: "Dart!"

Dart: "Lavitz!!"

[Dart throws down his weapon.]

Dart: "Lavitz!"

Lavitz: "AAArrrrggghhhh!"

[Lavitz impales himself, killing the thing on his back.]

Lavitz: "Dart, Your Majesty, I am sorry. Even though I was being manipulated I was.... I could even...thanks to Zackwell. I could meet you again in death."

Dart: "You are not dead! You will continue to live in us!"

Lavitz: "There is no time left. I will lead you to the Magic Signet Sphere blocker with the last of my strength." (Farewell, Dart.)

Dart: "Lavitz. Thank you."

[The way to the Signet Sphere is now open.]

Dart: "We made it."

Rose: "Yes. The moon has not set yet. The Signet Sphere is still safe."

Dart: "It means Shana is still safe."

Rose: "Once we go up this road of souls, there will be no return. We are climbing up."

R1 -> Wait.

R2 -> Yes.

R1: "Wait. I have to make the final preparation."

Rose: "Okay. But hurry."

R2: "Yes. Lavitz showed us the way. I have no hesitation. Let's go!"

[They take the road of souls upwards to the Signet Sphere.]

Dart: "It was safe."

Rose: "That Signet Sphere is the last barrier to protect the world."

Albert: "If it is destroyed...."

Rose: "There will be no other way but to deal with god itself."

Dart: "When Shana crosses to the Moon That Never Sets, the God of Destruction will be born...? I won't let it. I'll finish it here!"

Zieg: "I think so too."

Dart: "Dad!?"

[Zieg is below near the sphere.]

Zieg: "I'll finish the world here."

Rose: "Reveal yourself!"

Zieg: "I don't hide. Our settlement is a peaceful one. We don't need weapons. A fight is not appropriate before the celebration of a birth."

Dart: "I won't let you!! !!!"

Zieg: "Don't come near me!!!"

[Zieg repels his son's dragoon form.]

Dart: "I, I won't let you."

[Zieg destroys the Signet.]

Zieg: "The arrow has already been released!! To the finale of the world!!"

Rose: "The moon is falling!"

Albert: "The, the world is ending. Does that mean that Humans cannot revoke the will of the creator!?"

Dart: "Not yet. Don't give up!! It's just the signet of the Moon is broken!!"

Rose: "Yes. We can still struggle. The moon has not obtained Shana yet!! Let's go pursue Zieg!!"

[On the balcony nearby...]

Dart: "Is this a dead end!?"

[Coolon appears.]

Dart: "The wings of Savan!! Take us to the moon!!"

[The Moon That Never Sets falls onto the Divine Tree.]

Meru: "Dart, look!!"

Dart: "That's it!"

[The Virages that escape the moon damage Coolon.]

Meru: "Ahhhhh!"

Dart: "Ahhhhh!"

[Everyone crashes at the destination...]

Coolon: "Sorry. I cannot...fly...anymore..."

Dart: "Coolon...."

Rose: "Everything is turning out just as Zieg wished. The seal of the moon was broken, and the terribly disasterous plan laid by Soa finally has started. Those Virages are mere advance guards for the primary Virage Embryo. It seems the birth of the God of Destruction will only be a matter of time. Does the Divine Tree, which gave birth to all the species, want this as well?"

Dart: "The world is not over yet. We can still fight to save it, can't we!?"

Rose: "After you've seen those, you still can say that.... Let's go. The Moon That Never Sets is waiting for us."

[A shiny thing is further down the path.]

Dart: "Rose, what's this?"

Rose: "It's a fruit of the Divine Tree. It seems to be dried up, though."

Dart: "'Fruit'. Did all the species really arise from such small things?"

Rose: "Only the creator Soa knows that. So, it's just a legend for us. But, we are standing on the Divine Tree which supposedly was in the same legend. We'd better believe it."

Dart: "I guess so."

Rose: "Let's move on. We better hurry up or there will be no one even to tell the 'legend'."

[Another fruit is down the path...]

Rose: "I think... This fruit was...shed by some kind of fish."

Dart: "One of the fruits arisen from the Divine Tree."

Rose: "Yes. It was the same for us Humans."

Dart: "The God of Destruction will start the same way, won't it?"

Rose: "Yes... Let's move on."

[Even further on...]

Rose: "This stream.... It seems like it is sending a vital force to the Moon That Never Sets. It must be that the Divine Tree is getting ready to give birth to the God of Destruction."

Dart: "...! Then, if we take this stream in this...."

Rose: "Yes. It will carry us to the top. Let's hurry."

[They all jump in.]

Dart: "What a stream!"

[They all get spit out.]

Dart: "We got right up close."

Albert: "In addition, maybe because we let ourself flow in the vital force, I feel revitalized."

Miranda: "It means that the power of the Divine Tree that gave birth to all species is still alive."

Rose: "In order to kill all the species, it revived the power."

Meru: "Landing succeeded!!"

Haschel: "Taa!"

Dart: "What is that?"

[A weird caterpillar is on the tree.]

Meru: "It looks like a...bug."

Haschel: "Did Kongol's landing awaken it?"

Dart: "...We gotta get going."

[Dart finds another sparkle.]

Dart: "This is one of the fruits too."

Rose: "Yes, and all the species who were born in this way are about to be annihilated."

Dart: "Rose...."

Rose: "...Let's get going."

[Further on still...]

Dart: "It'll be soon."

Rose: "Yes. But look at that."

Dart: "Is that the caterpillar from back there?"

Rose: "It's a miracle. There was an unhatched fruit left over. !! It is a sub-species of a new insect. It was just born, and it is coming after us!"

[They defeat the insectine boss.]

Dart: "We barely defeated it. Let's go. We are almost at the moon."

[They continue on.]

Dart: "Moon That Never Sets.... It is spreading poison all over the world."

Rose: "In order to stop the poison, we have to reach the core of the Moon before it is too late."

Albert: "Unless Shana and the 'core', as Rose says, are wedded, the God of Destruction won't be born. Right? It is a dilemma for us because we want to take Shana back. If we don't meet Shana, and if we can destroy only the core of the moon, the world will be saved."

Miranda: "But, Zieg is here for sure. With Shana."

Haschel: "That is the only chance to save her."

Meru: "We will save both the world and Shana."

Dart: "Fate is not in the hands of the creator. It's in our hands! We won't let Soa decide the fate of the world! That goes for Shana's fate as well!! We will decide our own fate!!"

[They jump in the stream that leads to the moon.]

o-----o  
| Ch. 4 - 54 - The Moon That Never Sets TMT1 |  
o-----o

[A stream from the Divine Tree takes them into the moon's subsurface.]

Dart: "Is this the Moon That Never Sets!?"

Rose: "Yes. It has been long. Very.... Let's get going."

[The moon shakes.]

Dart: "The moon is shaking!? Dont tell me...the God of Destruction is about to be born!?"

Rose: "It cannot be...! The birth of the God of Destruction is our death!"

Dart: "That's right! We are still alive! Let's go! Must stop my father! Wow!?"

[When the pulsating light stops, everyone is in...]

Dart: "Is this a forest?"

Albert: "I thought we stepped into the moon."

Haschel: "But, indeed this tree is a true tree."

Miranda: "Oh no, we were sent to the ground!?"

Rose: "No. Listen. It's the heartbeat of the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction. An empty body that is the living corpse from which the soul was taken out by ancient Winglies on the day it was conceived in the Divine Tree.... We must be in the moon."

Dart: "Then no matter what it looks like, we gotta keep going!"

[Further along in the 'forest'...]

Dart: "It looks like a Grassland."

[The Grassland changes to a wintry setting.]

Dart: "Miranda, what's wrong?"

Miranda: "I know this place."

Dart: "Does it look like the forest of your home?"

Miranda: "Not only that.... It is the forest of Mille Seseau where I grew up. I'll be back soon. Sorry, but wait for me here. There is something I have to check...alone."

Dart: "Miranda!?"

[She runs off alone to a small place where a flower blooms.]

Dart: "As I expected...this is the forest of my home. Why is this in the moon? This rose is...."

[Flashback to that same spot, when Miranda was younger.]

Miranda: "Mother! Where are you going!?"

Miranda's Mother: "Go home Miranda!"

Man: "Huh? You have a kid!?"

Miranda's Mother: "Um, yeah."

Miranda: "Mother! Don't go! Father is calling you!"

Man: "What are you gonna do?"

Miranda's Mother: "Because I married that man my life has been completely ruined. He hardly works, and drinks all the time with the money I earned! I don't even have enough food and am starving everyday! I cannot stand it anymore!!"

Man: "..."

Miranda's Mother: "A beautiful life must be waiting for me if I leave this forest! Yes, I can say farewell to this miserable life! Now, let's go!"

Miranda: "Mo, Mother!"

[Back to the present. The rose sparkles.]

Miranda: "Wh, what!?"

[The Death Rose attacks Miranda. Her mother's face is in the flower petals.]

Miranda: "Why? Why did you abandon dad and me!?"

Miranda's Mother: "Ah, Miranda. I had no choice...."

Miranda: "Shut up! Dad fell ill and I became an orphan. You can never imagine how I have lived since then!"

Miranda's Mother: "...Ahhh.... It hurts. I understand that what I've done is unforgivable as a mother. But, I want you to understand."

Miranda: "What do you want me to understand!!!"

Miranda's Mother: "I worked because I didn't want you, a newborn baby, to starve. But he didn't even try to work."

Miranda: "My father may not have been a respected man. But at least he was with me all the time, unlike you!!"

Miranda's Mother: "...Ahhh... It hurts. I can imagine how angry you are at me. But I never forgot about you, even for a moment."

Miranda: "Don't lie to me!!!"

Miranda's Mother: "It's not a lie. I visited him so many times to take you with me. But every time, he just kicked me out."

Miranda: "What...? My mother was thinking about me."

Miranda's Mother: "You have the same name as the goddess of Mille. She is pure and loved by everybody. I named you that because it was my wish for you. ...Ahhh.... It hurts. I am sorry to make you feel lonely. Miranda, forgive me."

R1 -> I'll forgive you.

R2 -> No! I cannot forgive you!

R1: "Oh, you can forgive me? Thank you, Miranda."

R2: "Ah, Miranda. It's painful. As long as you hate me, I can't return to normal."

[Back in the forest...]

Miranda: "Mother, I was wrong. I entered the palace in order to preach love, and to build a world where everybody can live happily, but my heart was filled with sorrow and hatred. And without knowing, I was absorbed in fighting in order to ease my loneliness. I didn't even try to understand my mother's pain and agony, just accumulate hatred, and hurt many people. I don't deserve to be a Sacred Sister."

Dart: "Miranda, what happened!?"

Meru: "Are you really okay!? Your eyes are kind of watery."

Miranda: "Sorry. Please leave me alone now. Let's go. That's the only thing we can do now."

[A little further in, past the cold forestry setting...]

Dart: "What is this? We gotta go forward anyway."

[They walk forward and find themselves in...a human inn?]

Dart: "There are people...? What's going on? Why are people living in the moon?"

Rose: "I still don't know. But...."



Dart: "Rose!? What are you doing?"

[She hits Dart with her rapier.]

Rose: "You feel pain, it is certain this is not just an illusion. This world is 'reality.'"

Albert: "Indeed. I've never visited the moon before. But, I cannot help but feel I know this place. People's faces, clothes.... It's not a mistake. This is a building in Serdio."

Haschel: "I have traveled all over Endiness and they all have typical Serdian faces. Look, the girl over there.... Looks Serdian. No.... She is... not." (It cannot be!?)

[The girl disappears into a mirror.]

Dart: "Disappeared...!?"

Rose: "It looks like that is reality here too."

[Behind the mirror, there's another type of land...]

Dart: "I understand...that this place is not what it appears to be, but where are we now?"

Albert: "A world behind the wall.... It seems as if the labyrinth of the moon is not refusing us."

Haschel: "No, almost as if it's maybe inviting us."

Rose: "Minitos.... It seems this place belongs to them."

Albert: "I think they were the 99th species."

Dart: "Maybe they can tell us something about this place."

[The party continues and finds the girl.]

Haschel: (!?)

Dart: "You don't seem to be one of the Minitos."

Haschel: "Look at her closely. It's the girl in the room we came from."

Dart: "Oh. She's the girl who disappeared into the wall, isn't she!? Hi, what are you doing here?"

[She flees into a vortex.]

Haschel: "Dart! This girl...doesn't know about you yet."

Dart: "What are you talking about?"

Haschel: "Let me go now. She is...Claire. She is inviting me. Sorry...but please wait for me here."

Dart: "Haschel!?"

Rose: "Haschel was right. The girl was inviting Haschel, not you. We can only

wait for him."

Dart: "Okay, but, as with Miranda, what's going on in the moon?"

[Haschel and the girl are alone.]

Haschel: "Claire.... Is it you, Claire? It's me. Your father."

Claire: "Don't come here! I hate you dad!!"

Haschel: "Claire."

Claire: "Always, always strict discipline.... What can I use such a thing for!? The power to destroy!? The power to hurt people!? I don't need such power!!"

Haschel: "I strictly disciplined you since you were little. I only had you. I had to hand my art, my ancestral art, down to the next generation."

Claire: "It's not fair! I just want to sing songs, chitchat with my friends, pick flowers and fall in love!"

Haschel: "Our art was never meant to hurt people. It is a martial art to give life to people. Please understand."

Claire: "I don't understand!!"

[Haschel has to fight Claire.]

Haschel: "Do you remember the first time we matched wills? You read my movement in a blink, and went on the offensive with swiftness. It was an innate art."

Claire: "I don't think so. I am just a girl, like the ones you can find anywhere."

Haschel: "No! You can surpass me. Nobody has been charmed by the War God as much as you. Your hidden power..."

Claire: "Ah.... It's hot inside my body. Dad, help me. Somebody is taking me."

Haschel: "!! C, Claire, what's wrong!?"

Claire: "YEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEK!"

[Claire undergoes a transformation but returns.]

Claire: "I hate you, dad!! You did this to my body!! It's your fault, dad!!"

Haschel: "No, its impossible. The transmigration of the War God.... Is she demonized!!"

Claire: "YEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEEK!"

Haschel: "Incredible. Nobody has ever reached that level except the founder!"

[She does a huge attack on Haschel.]

Haschel: "UGH.... What...? The black art of Nagarujuna, Four-Gods-Destruction! How did Claire learn...? UGH.... There is nothing I can do."

Claire: "I am the War God! I preside of the art of war, and beckon death. It was your desire to awaken me. I am the answer to your long quest."

Haschel: "No! You are my Claire! You are not the War God! Leave from the body of my Claire!! I can hear.... It's the pained voice of Claire.... Hang in there, I'm coming to save you!! I feel your art down to my very core."

R1 -> Mind's eye, awaken!

R2 -> Claire, please forgive me.

R1: "I don't care about myself. I have to save my daughter, Claire! I'll focus all my body and soul into this, and kill the devil that possesses my Claire!!"

R2: "How can I exorcise this? Being obsessed with martial arts has made my precious daughter endure this suffering. Forgive me."

[Claire attacks and he repels her.]

Claire: "Thank you, dad.

[Back in 'reality'...]

Haschel: "Forgive me, Claire."

Dart: "Haschel, is it over?"

Miranda: "Haschel, you also saw the past?"

Haschel: "Yes, I did. But...the past wasn't as bitter as I imagined."

Rose: "It seems everything, both the future and past, are filled in this moon. The future when the world will be destroyed.... And our past...."

Dart: "Both Miranda and Haschel were made to see the past by the Moon, right?"

Rose: "They 'see'. As I told you, were are in reality. It's not illusion. Maybe they can do it because they are the 108th species and gods."

Haschel: "Let's move on. We wasted lots of time."

[Down another path out of 'Bale'...]

Dart: "What is this!? The ground is so far away!!"

Albert: "Are we floating in the air!?"

Rose: "You can stand up. It seems there is an invisible floor."

Dart: "Are we really in the sky?"

Meru: "It looks like it. 'Cuz, this is a cloud! Even I've never been in such a high place...."

Rose: "Really, anything can happen. Don't just look at the view forever, we are moving on."

[A large shadow goes over the ground.]

Rose: "That is.... Oh no! Michael!! No! I couldn't have been mistaken! I was with him for more than 10,000 years!"

Dart: "Is that your dragon, Rose?"

Rose: "It was the Vassal Dragon, my Dragon!"

[The dragon fires beams of energy.]

Rose: "Run!!"

[The party jumps off the path, splitting into two. Dart and Rose are off in one group, with everyone else in the other.]

Meru: "They're not around here."

Haschel: "It's Dart and Rose. They should be fine like us."

Miranda: "Of course. It's impossible for them to die from just an attack of a dragon."

Albert: "She called it 'Michael'. Why did Rose's Vassal Dragon attack us?"

Miranda: "This is just my guess, but in the moon, I think some sort of feeling that exists in our heart materializes itself."

Haschel: "You mean Rose had some caring feelings for her Vassal Dragon?"

Meru: "I flew around here and don't you think this place seems like the Home of Gigantos?"

Kongol: "Yes. But this was old Holy Land. Long long ago."

????: "URGH!"

Voice: "There is one hiding down here! Don't miss even one! Annihilate all Gigantos!"

????: "ARRRRGGGGHHHH!"

????: "Hey!! Doel's coming!! Run!!"

[Emperor Doel and some of his men were slaying Giganto-killers 20 years prior.]

Doel: "There will be no one to devastate the Holy Land of the Gigantos ever."

Knight of Serdio: "But Your Majesty Doel, we may be too late. Only if Your Majesty Carlo gives us permission to dispatch."

Doel: "Don't talk about him. He is...no longer alive."

Knight of Serdio: "Your Majesty Doel! There is something in here!"

Doel: "Come out."

[A young Giganto walks out -- it's Kongol.]

Doel: "A Giganto child!? I am the new King of Serdio, Doel. There are no more people to persecute you. You can live in peace from now on. What's your name?"

Kongol: "Human! Get out!"

Knight of Serdio: "Don't be so disrespectful! His Majesty Doel tried to help Gigantos fight against Humans!!"

Doel: "I am a Human, but before that, I am a man who wishes the coexistence of all species. Don't you like peace?"

Kongol: "Me...Kongol. Everybody dead. Kongol alone."

Doel: "Then come with us?"

Meru: "Is this something in Kongol's heart?"

Albert: "Then is that the truth of my Uncle Doel?"

Kongol: "Emperor Doel!! Emperor Doel!! Emperor Doel!! Emperor Doel!! I have something to do! I go now!"

[Up the stairs nearby...]

Kongol: "Emperor Doel said. Strong leader is required to make equal world. Strong leader needs strong power. Kongol will get strongest power. Dart needs Kongol, so Kongol go."

Meru: "Kongol, what are you talking about?"

[Kongol's left on his own already.]

Haschel: "Wait for him here."

[Kongol goes ahead and finds another Giganto.]

Indora: "So, you came."

Kongol: "Brother. I became stronger."

Indora: "I see."

Kongol: "Brother the strongest. Kongol admire brother. Brother Kongol's pride."

Indora: "I see."

Kongol: "Brother, Kongol needs power. To help Dart. To save world."

Indora: "I see."

Kongol: "Brother, Kongol overcomes now. Kongol overcomes brother!"

Indora: "Come!"

[The two brothers start to fight.]

Indora: "What's wrong with you? You're so pathetically weak!"

[Kongol wins.]

Indora: "Kongol.... A hero. The strongest hero of Gigantos."

Kongol: "Brother...."

Indora: "Go, to the people who need your power."

Kongol: "Brother, Kongol is...."

Indora: "To fulfill desire is the power of destruction. To care for others is the power of truth. You...received the power to overcome Indora.... The strongest power.... Kongol, the pride of Indora.... Well done...."

Kongol: "Brother!"

[Indora disappears.]

Haschel: "You conquered it, didn't you?"

Kongol: "Brother...praised Kongol. First time for Kongol to praise. Kongol happy."

Haschel: "But, what does the moon want to show us?"

Miranda: "It's not a moon anymore. It's the flesh of the God of Destruction."

Albert: "And.... What the God of Destruction wants to show us is annihilation."

Meru: "Let's go! We gotta look for Dart and Rose!"

[They return to 20-years-past Bale.]

Albert: "We couldn't find Dart anywhere."

Haschel: "Hmm, maybe it's better to wait for them somewhere rather than just blindly look around."

Meru: "Then, let's wait here. This town is the only place there are lots of people."

Albert: "It seems that is the right thing to do."

[The view changes to Dart & Rose.]

Dart: "I understand that we lost everybody because the Dragon attacked us. But why? Why did your Vassal Dragon attack us, Rose? Was it to bring the two of us here, the place filled with Dragons?"

Rose: "I think.... We will find out. Soon. Let's go. Either to destroy the Virage Embryo...or to fight against Zieg. I need everybody with me."

Dart: "Rose...."

Rose: "Don't be so shocked. I trust everybody, too."

[Up the path, little doggie-things are around.]

Dart: "Rose, what are these?"

Rose: "This is a baby dragon. It was called a Pseudo Dragon. It seems everything, including the future and past, exist here. My favorite Pseudo Dragon didn't make it to the present age. But I am encountering the past now. But, we don't have time to be sentimental. Let's go."

[Up the road a smidgen...]

Rose: "Dart, can you wait a little? He is calling me over there."

Dart: "Okay."

[At a dead end, a dead dragon is found.]

Rose: "I knew it. I know this place. It's where I met Michael for the first time."

[Flashback. Zieg and Rose in the past are here.]

Rose: "Darkness Dragon.... Sorry. We don't have time. Winglyes are mighty. Mighty enough to annihilate us, and the entire species. In order to liberate Humans, we have to sacrifice you, Dragon. Now is the time to decide, extinction or war."

[A baby Dragon pops outta the black mist.]

Zieg: "We choose 'war'. The Dragoon Spirit left by the Darkness Dragon, and this newborn dragon will be the spearhead of the war."

Rose: "This baby needs a name. Black Burst Dragon, Michael. How about Michael?"

Zieg: "Rose's Vassal Dragon, the Darkness Dragoon, the Black Burst Dragon, Michael. It's a good name. So now we can go."

Rose: "Yes. The real war has not started yet."

[Back to the present.]

Rose: "Michael! Don't you recognize me!?"

[The two start to fight.]

Rose: "Michael! It's me, Rose! Don't you recognize me!?"

Dart: "It seems not to be working."

Rose: "It's out of control, just like last time. He forgot the pride of the Dragon and turned himself into a mere raving beast."

Dart: "It has a wildness een beyond that of Feyrbrand! Damn!! What a Dragon! It yields to neither sword nor magic!!"

Rose: "The Darkness Dragon is the strongest Dragon of all, having the best attack and defense, along with having the best agility."

Dart: "I don't need to hear about it! Is there anyway to defeat him!?"

Rose: "Michael's shell is special armor for the Darkness Dragon. It repels any attack by the enemy."

Dart: "What should we do!?"

Rose: "There is only one blind spot."

Dart: "What is it!? Tell me now!!"

Rose: "God! What should I do!?"

R1 -> Tell Dart the blind spot.

R2 -> I can't....

R1: "Afer he shoots the black laser, his defense falls a second, showing his heart. That's his only weak spot."

R2: Dart: "Rose!! What are you doing!! We have to do something or we will be finished!!"

[They both defeat Michael.]

Rose: "A Dragon's body is capable of enormous endurance. But, it's heart is not. After many fights, it becomes savage, and starts to blindly attack people and in the end, it won't listen to the orders of Dragoons either. That's why I killed Michael!! I killed him with these hands!!"

Dart: "That's enough of looking back at the past. You have lived for 10,000 years because you didn't want to see the future to be destroyed, right, Rose?"

Rose: "You are right. Thank you. You reminded me of what's important."

Dart: "Let's look for Albert and the others. Then we have to head to the core of the moon."

[They both return to Bale.]

Meru: "Dart!! Rose!!"

Albert: "We were right about waiting here."

Dart: "All of you look...all right."

Albert: "Of course. We cannot fall until we complete our mission. Now, before we leave, let's exchange information."

[They do so.]

Dart: "I see. Doel was in the Home of Gigantos.... To save Gigantos. Hmm."

Albert: "It wasn't the cruel uncle we've known."

Dart: "But it's that Doel who killed King Carlo."

Rose: "I think we will find out what the moon wants to show us when we meet Doel. Besides, I think we have to see it in order to proceed, given the facts thus far."

Dart: "That's right. Let's go out on the town now."

[In Bale, they talk to the gate guards.]

Albert: "I am Albert. Is Uncle Doel in?"

Gate Keeper of Serdio: "I have been waiting for you."

Albert: "Waiting for me?"



Gate Keeper of Serdio: "Please go ahead."

[Inside Doel's chamber.]

Albert: "Let me go alone from here."

[He enters Doel's chamber alone.]

Doel: "I have been waiting for you, Albert."

Albert: "You 'have been waiting'. Then it's simple. You must know the reason why I'm here."

Doel: "You are here to find out the truth about whether I assassinated your father, my brother, and the reason. I would say...it was to save Serdio from an incompetent leader named Carlo."

Albert: "My father was not incompetent! He was loved by his people and admired by his vassals!"

Doel: "You were a mere six-year-old kid back then. How could you know? What was brought on the people by overtaxation and disorder!? What can ministers soaked in corruption do!? You have been given false truths, so how could you know!?"

Albert: "Even if...it was the truth, you shouldn't have killed him!"

Doel: "I guess you won't be satisfied with words. Defeat me to find out the rest!!"

[The battle begins.]

Albert: "Uncle Doel! Why did you eliminate my father!!"

Doel: "It's obvious! The people of Serdio wanted me! They desired my power as the true leader!!"

Albert: "It is not true!! What people desire is not power. It's peace."

Doel: "Who do you think brought peace!? Who do you think brought order and hope back to Serdio!? Peace cannot be maintained without power!"

Albert: "Uncle, you oppressed people with your power. How much value can we give to such a transient peace. What people need is...."

Doel: "I don't need to hear about things like justice or love!"

Albert: "Power alone does not solve anything!"

Doel: "The ideals and reality are different!!"

Albert: "Wake up, uncle!!"

Doel: "You are so persistent!! I cannot believe this. How can someone as helpless as you be this powerful!?"

Albert: "You wouldn't understand this, uncle. You have had faith only in your own power."

Doel: "What did you say!?"

Albert: "I'm different from you and I am not alone. My friends have always been at my side during the many occasions when I was dispirited. I've overcome difficulties."

Doel: "Ha Ha! Silly!!"

Albert: "When I was young, my father would often say that he didn't quite have the stature to be King. Without Doel, he couldn't do anything. He also said that it is you who was most likely to take the throne."

Doel: "I can't believe it. That's...why.... What did he see in me?"

Albert: "My father trusted in you. If you had gotten together and governed the country, this tragedy would never have happened."

Doel: "Albert! I'm a mere shadow of Carlo! I have no way left but to go forward!!"

Albert: "Uncle!!"

[Albert defeats his relative.]

Doel: "Why? Why doesn't my power work!? Why am I losing even though my power exceeds yours!?"

Albert: "For Lavitz, who devoted himself to me and fell. For knights who fell in battle. I have to win for them!"

Doel: "Absurd! You are saying I have been wrong."

Albert: "I lost so many people in battle. In my times of deep sorrow and despair, my many friends like Dart imparted to me courage and strength."

Doel: "I see. You are not fighting alone. That's why I cannot defeat you."

Albert: "Uncle...."

Doel: "I've been unwise to become infatuated with power. But, I have no regrets. Carlo, the king's last words were to take care of this country and you. We have different ways but they lead to the same intention. As a man who grives for the country, the rest depends on you."

Albert: "Uncle!!"

[Doel disappears.]

Albert: "It was the sad truth, wasn't it? But the annihilation of the world will generate a sadness equal to the number of living people."

Dart: "I won't let it. I will save both the world and Shana! We are here for that!"

[Down the path that Michael blocked...]

Dart: "What is that?"

Miranda: "Incredible.... I cannot tbelieve there is a palace more beautiful than the Crystal Palace."

Meru: "That is the palace of the Winglies."

Albert: "It could not be made with human technology."

Meru: "Let's go!"

Dart: "The path has vanished!?"

[Meru is teleported somewhere by herself.]

Meru: "What are you doin'!! Oops...? Where is everybody!? The... The Archangel!? Why are you here?"

Archangel: "Meru...I know everything. You threw the pride of the sublime Winglies away, and have been with barbaric Humans, haven't you."

Meru: "Archangel! Humans are not barbaric! They have many good things which we Winglies don't have!"

Archangel: "Silence. Fine, Meru. I will make you remember the sublime spirit of a Wingly."

[The fight begins.]

Archangel: "Wake up, Meru. You have already seen the reality of arrogant and ignoble Humans!"

Meru: "Archangel! Humans can never be ignoble creatures! They help each other when they are in trouble, even if they don't know each other. And above all they have dreams and hopes."

Archangel: "Silly. Humans are feeble-minded even more than you would think. We have to rule them or eventually they will cease to exist."

Meru: "I don't think so!! All the lives in this world are equal. We shouldn't rule or be ruled!"

Archangel: "Silence, Meru! Have you forgotten what we have accomplished? We have stabilized the chaotic world, and saved tribes that would otherwise be extinct."

Meru: "Really!"

Archangel: "Once there was 107 species and half no longer exist. Our rule prevents the subversion of the world."

Meru: "That's wrong. 'Cuz there were species that were stamped out during the Winglies' domination!"

Archangel: "They were meant to be extinct from the beginning."

Meru: "You liar!! You destroyed them because they rebelled against the Winglies!!"

Archangel: "Meru! A heretic like you disturbs our ordered world."

Meru: "Shut up!! You are not real! You are an invented god so they can justify themselves, Archangel."

Archangel: "It's not true. I am a reflection of your mind. The disdain for Humans in your mind created me."

Meru: "It's not true! I don't believe it!!"

Archangel: "Meru, don't lie to yourself. You think you can continue to deceive yourself playing a fool like that?"

Meru: "You fool! Don't tell me crazy things!! I love Humans! I adore Dart, Shana, and the others! This is real!!"

Archangel: "...Meru."

Meru: "Get out of my sight!! I love Humans."

[The battle ends.]

Dart: "Meru!! Are you okay!?"

Meru: "Of course I am!? Let's go!!"

[They ride up to a different world.]

Dart: "What is going on here? It is different from any part of the world we've known."

Rose: "Indeed, the places we have been looked like places on earth. But this is a completely different world."

Dart: "Don't tell me, this is the core of the moon!?"

Rose: "This look is appropriate for the world of the Virage Embryo, the God of Destruction, to be born."

Dart: "Let's hurry up! If this is our destination, my dad should be heading here too!"

[The party continues until--]

????: "My world. My future. My heart..."

Dart: "Who is it!?"

????: "My world. My future. My heart..."

Rose: "It is talkign directly to our minds."

????: "...Dart."

Dart: "Oh no! Is it Shana!?"

[At the room beyond, a massive thing is sitting.]

Dart: "Wha...what's this!?"

Rose: "It's a Super Virage! I guess he is acting as a gate keeper to protect the God of Destruction!"

Dart: "I don't care what is waiting for us! Yaaaaa!!!"

[They defeat the Super Virage.]

Dart: "Was the Super Virage that we defeated, in reality, Shana?"

Rose: "I don't think so."

Dart: "Why are you so sure!?"

Rose: "We, well...."

Albert: "Dart, pull yourself together!"

[At the moon's core, Shana floats unconscious.]

Dart: "!? Shana!! !?"

[Zieg drops down and stops him.]

Rose: "Zieg!! You don't deserve to use spirits!!"

Zieg: "You say it even after this?"

Rose: "Oh no, the Red-Eye Dragon still recognizes you!?"

Zieg: "This is the truth. And the annihilation of the world that is about to occur is the truth as well!!"

Dart: "Dad, stop it. The power is...not generated for that!!"

Zieg: "Everything was born to die!! It's the same for spirits or the world!! Learn through your body!!"

Dart: "Sttttttttooooooooooop!!!!"

[They start fighting.]

Zieg: "What's wrong with you, Dart! You're so pathetically weak!!"

Dart: "Darn!! This is my father's power!!"

[Zieg Feld is finally defeated.]

Zieg: "The time has come...I no longer need this flesh."

[Zieg dies suddenly and a weird spectre emerges.]

Dart: "Wha...!?"

Rose: "Melbu Frahma!!"

Melbu Frahma: "I am the famous Melbu Frahma, supreme leader of the Winglies. I've been waiting for this moment for over 10,000 years!"

Rose: "Why!? You must have been defeated by Zieg!!"

Melbu Frahma: "It's true that the sword of that man penetrated me. But, what vanished is only my flesh. I cast a petrifying spell on the man, at the same time, I transmigrated my soul to the spirit. The sublime soul is immortal."

Dart: "How long have you been manipulating my dad!?"

Melbu Frahma: "At that moment, I reentered the light. The first light after 11,000 years. When the Black Monster came to Neet, that foolish soul tried to release the power of the Dragoon, without knowing that I was waiting for that moment!!"

Rose: "So...it was then!!"

Melbu Frahma: "I was released from the spirit and revived! In order to obtain an eternal body that is proper for an immortal soul!! And now, I am becoming a god!!"

[Shana is taken out of the Virage's embryo and Melbum moves in.]

Rose: "Is he merging with the Virage Embryo!?"

Dart: "Is he going to be the god instead of Shana!?"

Melbu Frahma: "You are right. I obtained the flesh of the God of Destruction!! I am the 'God' himself!!"

????: "A god? Don't make me laugh."

[Lloyd shows up.]

Dart: "Lloyd! You are alive!"

Lloyd: "I cannot die with the wrong god still around! There is no space for you in my utopia!! Melbu Frahma!! You forgot our supernatural spirit and pursued your own interests! Unforgivable!! AHHHHHHHHHH!!"

Melbu Frahma: "You bothersome dragonfly!! It's annoying!! CRASH!!"

[Lloyd darts around but ends up getting speared by a powerful beam attack.]

Lloyd: "GWAH!!"

Dart: "!! Lloyd!! What is this!?"

Lloyd: "It is the Dragoon Spirit of the Divine Dragon and...the Dragon Buster."

Dart: "Are you here to give us this!?"

Lloyd: "Don't be conceited. I just ended up here while I was pursuing my own ideal."

Dart: "Yeah, right."

Lloyd: "His birth will be the death of the world. Hurry up.... Stop him.... Farewell.... People who confront the fate of Soa...."

[Lloyd disappears.][Acquired Divine Dragoon Spirit][Acquired Dragon Buster]

R1 -> No. we need to prepare.

R2 -> Let's go. Our last battle.

R1: "No, we need to prepare."

R2: "Let's go. Our last battle."

Melbu Frahma: "I have acquired all. The immortality.... And the ultimate power.... I am the god...who purifies the world...! Under the fate determined by Soa. Death to those who rebel against fate. Death to all life...! And may your death bless the new world to which I shall descend!!"

Dart: "We won't let you!! We are the Dragoons!! We are ready to fight against fate!! Let's go!!"

[The ultimate battle begins. After a lengthy battle, Dart uses the Divine Dragon spirit to fight Melbu Frahma's 7th-generation form and defeat it.]

Melbu Frahma: "Arrrrrggghhhhhhhhh!!!"

Dart: "Look! Shana!!"

Shana: Dart!"

Zieg: "I have been waiting for this moment. I was captured, waiting so long. I am sorry."

Dart! Arrrghghhhhh!

Haschel: "Hmm?"

Meru: "Ahh!"

Kongol: "What?"

[Melbu, who had exploded partially, forms once again to shoot lasers.]

Melbu Frahma: "How dare you!? Inferior humans cannot outsmart me, a god!"

Zieg: "Rose, the time has come. This is the end of our long journey."

Rose: "Zieg..."

Zieg: "Could you come with me?"

Rose: "Yes. I will never leave you again."

Melbu Frahma: "Arrrrrgrrrrrr!"

Dart: "Damn!"

Melbu Frahma: "Ahhhhh!"

Zieg: "Dart, you have grown up! I couldn't do anything for you as a father. Please forgive me."

Dart: "But father, we finally met! This isn't fair!"

Rose: "Dart, I'm so glad I met you!"

Zieg: "Ahhhhhhhhhhhhhh!"

[Rose and Zieg go to attack Melbu Frahma and explode near him.]

Dart: "Rose! Father!"

Shana: "No, Dart!"

[The moon starts to explode. Zieg and Rose are not dead, yet.]

Zieg: "My role has ended. Place the weights of the future by yourself. This is your age to give, Shana."

Dart: "What are you talking about? We're all in it together."

Rose: "We were never meant to exist in this age."

Dart: "Noooooooooo!"

[Rose and Zieg lag behind.]

Rose: "My age ended in remote antiquity. Farewell, Dart, and thank you!"

[The Divine Tree explodes also. Everyone but Rose and Zieg makes it out.]

Dart: "Rose! Fatherrrrrr!"

[The ending montage scenes play out.]

```

o-----o
| 54) Need + Thanks                                NDT1 |
o-----o

```

```

----
NEED
----

```

- During Bishop Dille's speech in Deningrad - "...completed its rule..." <- ???
- Dialogue changes if you kill S Virage before Grand Jewel
- Dialogue about getting Kongol's Dragoon Spirit from Indora
- Dialogue Lloyd says in short fight against Melbu; "Unforgivable!" and on = ??
- Dialogue said in FMV after defeating Melbu Frahma
- After-credits dialogue, if any? My game froze up so I couldn't get it. ;\_\_\_\_;

```

-----
THANKS
-----

```

- SCEA, for this awesome game
- EmP, carcinogen, McFadden, and Venter over at HonestGamers for just hangin' and talking about this game. Love you goofuses. <3

```

o-----o
| 55) Updates and Legality                            UPD1 |
o-----o

```

08-01-07 -----+ Added to GameFAQs

[DISCLAIMER]

This document is intended for private home use ONLY, and may not be reproduced through electronic or commercial means without the expressed consent of the author (P. Summers). It cannot be hosted, edited, or distributed for profit, and may not be given away as an add-in/gift to bought items. All rights are reserved to respective parties, even those not explicitly stated herein. Those who find this document on sites not listed below should e-mail the author (me). Thanks for reading this, and thanks for respectin' FAQ authors.



